German 101

German 101

REBECCA LINAM

UNIVERSITY OF NORTH ALABAMA DIGITAL PRESS AT COLLIER LIBRARY
FLORENCE, AL

German 101 Copyright © 2022 by Rebecca Linam is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International License, except where otherwise noted.

Contents

Table of Contents vii

About German 101 ix

Part I. Main Body

1. Section 1-1 1
2. Section 1-2 22
3. Section 1-3 33
4. Section 1-4 50
5. Section 1-5 61
6. Section 1-6 66
7. Section 1-7 75
8. Section 1-8 86
9. Section 1-9 93
10. Section 1-10 100
11. Section 1-11 105
12. Section 1-12 131
13. Section 1-13 146
14. Section 1-14 154
15. Chapter 1 - Glossary 155
16. Section 2-1 158
17. Section 2-2 168
18. Section 2-3 184
19. Section 2-4 203
20. Section 2-5 234

21. Section 2-6 243
22. Section 2-7 248
23. Section 2-8 255
24. Chapter 2 - Glossary 257
25. Section 3-1 262
26. Section 3-2 291
27. Section 3-3 297
28. Section 3-4 311
29. Section 3-5 316
30. Section 3-6 342
31. Section 3-7 348
32. Chapter 3 - Glossary 350

Chapter 1 - Glossary 353
Chapter 1 - Extra Practice 358
Chapter 2 - Extra Practice 360
Chapter 2 - Glossary 361
Chapter 3 - Glossary 367
Dictionary 369
Appendix 395
Just for Fun! 396
Chapter 2 Vocabulary (visual learner glossary) 398

Table of Contents

Kapitel 1

- 1.1 Greetings, Introductions, and Farewells
- 1.2 Definite Articles; Possession
- 1.3 Numbers and Pronunciation
- 1.4 Adjectives and Negation
- 1.5 Pronouns in the Nominative Case
- 1.6 The Verb “sein”
- 1.7 The Verb “haben”
- 1.8 Plurals
- 1.9 Indefinite Articles (Ein/eine) and “Kein/Keine
- 1.10 The Alphabet
- 1.11 Present Tense—Regular Verbs
- 1.12 Nominative Case and Word Order
- 1.13 Possessive Adjectives

Kapitel 2

- 2.1 Telling Time
- 2.2 Food, Drink, and Family Members
- 2.3 The Accusative Case
- 2.4 Stem-changing Verbs
- 2.5 Accusative Prepositions
- 2.6 Accusative Personal Pronouns
- 2.7 Future Tense

Kapitel 3

- 3.1 Imperative
- 3.2 Twenty-four-hour clock
- 3.3 Der-words vs. ein-words
- 3.4 Adjectives of indefinite number (WAVEM words)
- 3.5 Modal verbs
- 3.6 Wissen vs. kennen

3.7 Oral Proficiency Interview Practice

About German 101

Features of *German 101*:
(Jump ahead to German 102? 201? 350?)

- Short articles and dialogues in each chapter.
- Extra practice for each grammar concept.
- Links to an interactive video series that reviews grammar and vocabulary.
- Comic strips to promote interest, reading, and provide additional visual examples.
- Exercises for in class and out of class.
- Links to German music from the 1980s to the present day with grammar concepts to introduce music culture.
- Links to videos that reteach each grammar concept and pronounce new words.
- Proficiency interview practice at the end of each chapter.
- Quick upgrades to the text as necessary.

New words are introduced gradually in colored text boxes next to each concept. Sections can be combined or rearranged to make the desired chapter length. For example, if you wish to cover the alphabet on day one, simply do that section first. I've placed it in the middle of chapter one because I prefer to gradually introduce it along with pronunciation as I go so that students begin to speak quickly and don't grow disinterested. Every effort has been made to compare similarities and differences between English and German.

This textbook has links to many online sites with automatically graded exercises, such as www.germanzone.org. Deutsche Welle's video series, *Nicos Weg*, also has interactive online exercises whose scores can be saved online for homework grades.

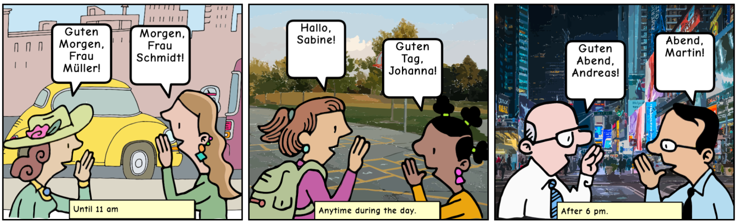
Many of the exercises are interactive and give instant feedback. Some of these I created myself, and others were borrowed from

Claudia Kost and Crystal Sawatzky's OER textbook "Willkommen: Deutsch für alle" to supplement with extra practice. I have noted this in the textbook when applicable. Images are copyright free and taken from Public Domain Vectors unless otherwise indicated, but all are CCBY.

I am in the process of recording audio clips to update more of the vocabulary and exercises.

1. Section 1-1

1-1: Greetings, Introductions, and Farewells


Guten Morgen, Frau Müller!
Morgen, Frau Schmidt!
Until 11 am
Hallo, Sabine!
Guten Tag, Johanna!
Anytime during the day.
Guten Abend, Andreas!
Abend, Martin!
After 6 pm.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Formal	Informal

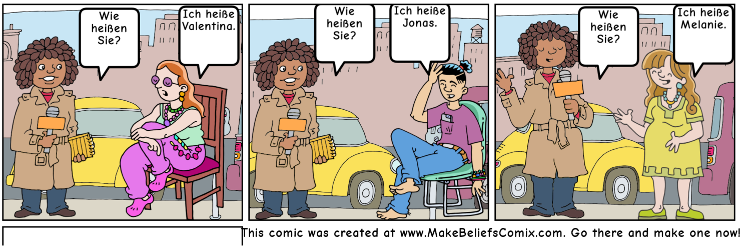
Guten Morgen! (Until 11 am) *One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-1* Guten Tag! (During the day) *One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-2* Guten Abend! (After 6 pm) *One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-3* (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Galaxy151, Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International)	Morgen! Tag! Abend! Hallo! (anytime)

For more on regional differences in greetings, check out Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) activity below:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-67

Watch Germanpod101.com's video to hear these greetings being pronounced.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-1


Wie heißen Sie?
Ich heiße Valentina.
Wie heißen Sie?
Ich heiße Jonas.
Wie heißen Sie?
Ich heiße Melanie.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

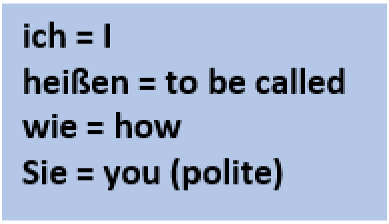
Wie heißen Sie? What's your name? How do you call yourself?

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-4

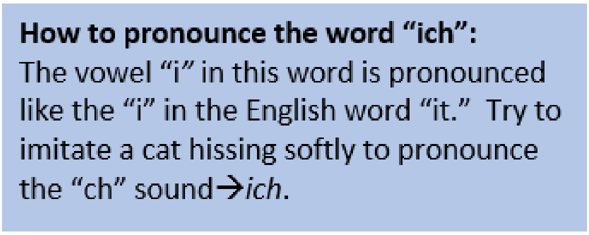
Ich heiße ______. My name is ________. I am called __________.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-5

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Galaxy151, Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International.)



ich = I
heißen = to be called
wie = how
Sie = you (polite)

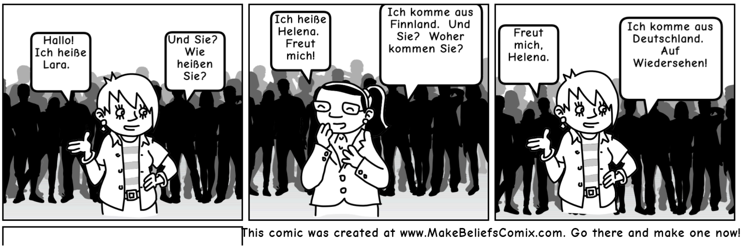


How to pronounce the word "ich":
The vowel "i" in this word is pronounced like the "i" in the English word "it." Try to imitate a cat hissing softly to pronounce the "ch" sound→*ich*.

Freut mich! Nice to meet you!

Watch Anja's video to hear "Ich heiße ________" and "Wie heißen Sie?" being pronounced and to see her reteaching this lesson.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-2


Hallo! Ich heiße Lara.
Und Sie? Wie heißen Sie?
Ich heiße Helena. Freut mich!
Ich komme aus Finnland. Und Sie? Woher kommen Sie?
Freut mich, Helena.
Ich komme aus Deutschland. Auf Wiedersehen!
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Woher kommen Sie? Where do you come from?

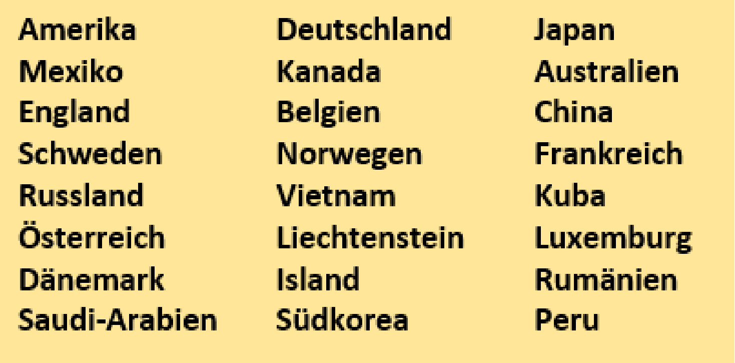
(Audio clips courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-6

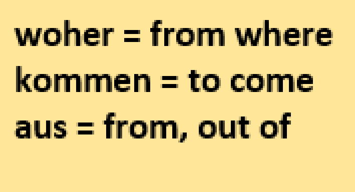
Ich komme aus _______. I come from __________.

For example, if you come from France, you would say, “Ich komme aus Frankreich.”

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-7



Amerika
Mexiko
England
Schweden
Russland
Österreich
Dänemark
Saudi-Arabien
Deutschland
Kanada
Belgien
Norwegen
Vietnam
Liechtenstein
Island
Südkorea
Japan
Australien
China
Frankreich
Kuba
Luxemburg
Rumänien
Peru



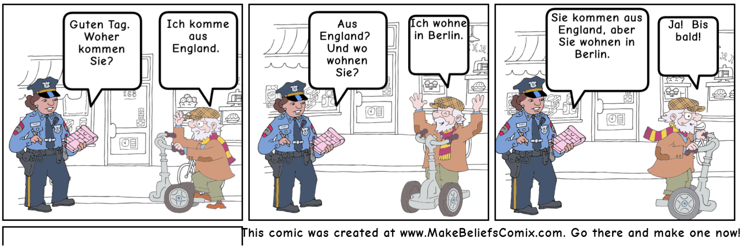
woher = from where
kommen = to come
aus = from, out of

Watch Anja's video to see her reteaching "Woher kommen Sie?" and "Ich komme aus __________."

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-3

Watch Coffeebreak German's video to hear interviews with native German speakers answering the question "Woher kommen Sie?"

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-4


Guten Tag. Woher kommen Sie?
Ich komme aus England.
Aus England? Und wo wohnen Sie?
Ich wohne in Berlin.
Sie kommen aus England, aber Sie wohnen in Berlin.
Ja! Bis bald!
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Wo wohnen Sie? Where do you live?

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

wo = where
wohnen = to live
in = in

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-8

Ich wohne in ______. I live in __________.

Watch Anja's video to see her pronouncing „Wo wohnen Sie?" and "Ich wohne in __________." After 2:06, she jumps into some more advanced stuff that you won't learn until next chapter. Feel free to stop at that point, if you want to stick with just what we're learning for now.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-5

Saying Goodbye:

Tschüss! Bye! (Informal)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-9

Auf Wiedersehen! Good-bye! (Formal)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-10

Bis später! Until later! (Informal)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-11

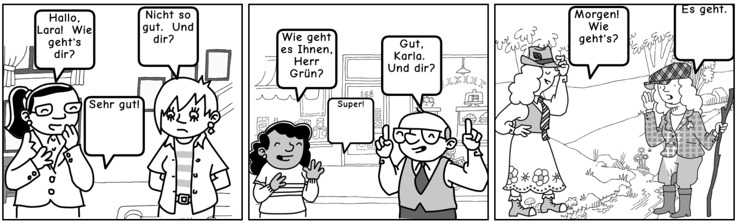
Bis bald! Until soon! (Informal)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-12

(Audio courtesy of Galaxy151, Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International).

Ex. A: Alles über Sie! Write a very brief paragraph introducing yourself to someone else. Don't forget to say hello and goodbye.

Wie geht's?


Hallo, Lara! Wie geht's dir?
Nicht so gut. Und dir?
Sehr gut!
Wie geht es Ihnen, Herr Grün?
Super!
Gut, Karla. Und dir?
Morgen! Wie geht's?
Es geht.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

To ask how someone is doing, use the following phrases:

- Wie geht's? *How are you? (Lit. How goes it?)*

  You can use this phrase with anyone, whether formal or informal. You may be wondering why there is an apostrophe in the word *geht*'s. This is a short form of "geht es." We use the apostrophe to show that the letter "e" has been left out.

- Wie geht es dir? *How are you? (Informal)*

  Use this phrase when speaking to someone with whom you would use "du."

- Wie geht es Ihnen? *How are you? (Formal)*

  Use this one when speaking to someone with whom you would use "Sie."

Listen to Wikimedia user Galaxy151's audio clip of these: (Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#audio-482-13

Here are a few ways to answer this question.

Positive	Neutral	Negative
Gut! Ganz gut! Sehr gut! Super!	Es geht.	Nicht gut. Nicht so gut. Nicht sehr gut.

BEWARE! You may be tempted to answer with "Ich bin gut," but in German it would mean that you are a good person, not that you are doing well. If you want to answer in a complete sentence, use, "Mir geht es gut!" (You will learn the grammar behind this phrase in a later chapter, but it can be memorized for now.)

Ex. B: Wie geht's? Ask your classmates how they are?

A: Wie geht's? (Alternative: Wie geht es dir?/Wie geht es Ihnen?)

B: (Use one of the answers above or come up with your own!)

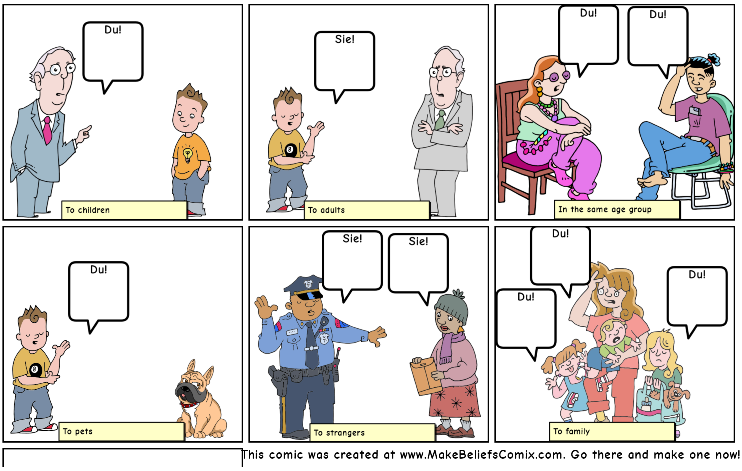
Test your listening comprehension. (Courtesy of Dr. Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-62

Du vs. Sie

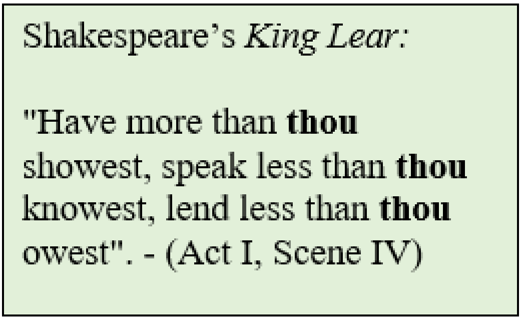
In the examples above, you see the word *Sie*, which means "you." German has two words for "you"—*Sie* and *du*. The chart and the comic strip list some instances when to use *du* or *Sie*.

Sie	du
People you don't know People you wish to treat with respect People who are older than you	Friends and family Children and pets God People your own age or younger


Du!
To children
Sie!
To adults
Du!
Du!
In the same age group
Du!
To pets
Sie!
Sie!
To strangers
Du!
Du!
Du!
To family

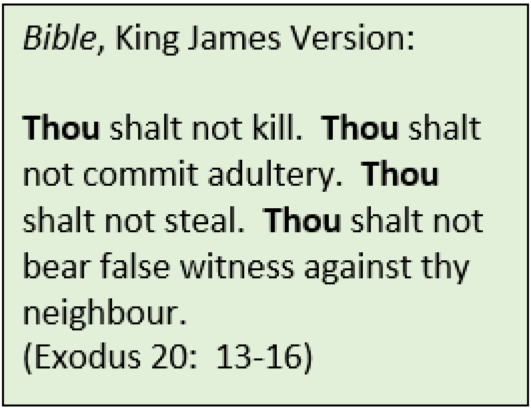
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

It may seem strange at first that there are two words for "you" in German. However, we actually have two ways to say "you" in English: *thou* and *you*. *Thou* is the English equivalent of German *du*. Nowadays, it has become old-fashioned, but we still see it in Shakespeare's works and the King James Version of the Bible. Whenever you see the word "thou," it is implied that the people are very close to one another or know each other very well.



Shakespeare's *King Lear:*

"Have more than **thou** showest, speak less than **thou** knowest, lend less than **thou** owest". - (Act I, Scene IV)



Bible, King James Version:

Thou shalt not kill. **Thou** shalt not commit adultery. **Thou** shalt not steal. **Thou** shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.
(Exodus 20: 13-16)

For a more in-depth discussion on "du vs. Sie," feel free to watch Easy German's video–DU oder SIE?

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#oembed-6

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-1

Test your listening comprehension. (Courtesy of Dr. Claudia Kost, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-63

Ex. D: Video: *Nicos Weg. Folge 1: "Hallo!"* Watch the video and do the online activities associated with it.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/hallo/l-37250531

Pronouns

You have already learned the pronouns *Sie*, *du*, and *ich* in German. Here are two more pronouns:

er→he
sie→she(Easy way to remember; *sie* rhymes with "she.")

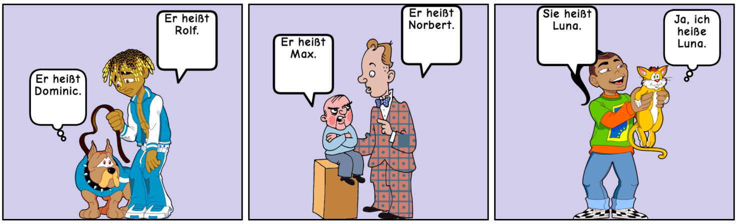
Notice that the word for “she” and “you” are the same, EXCEPT that it is capitalized when it means “you.”

Er heißt Kevin.	He is called Kevin.
Sie heißt Jana.	She is called Jana.

Notice the endings:

- ich heiß**e**
- er/sie heiß**t**
- Sie heiß**en**

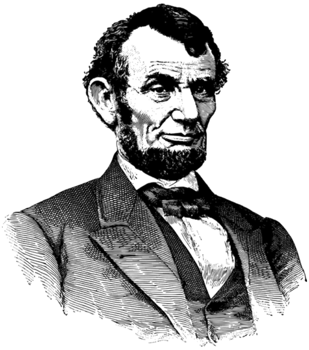
German changes the ending of verbs according to the subject, i.e. ich, er/sie, Sie, etc. You will learn more about this later on in this chapter.


Er heißt Dominic.
Er heißt Rolf.
Er heißt Max.
Er heißt Norbert.
Sie heißt Luna.
Ja, ich heiße Luna.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

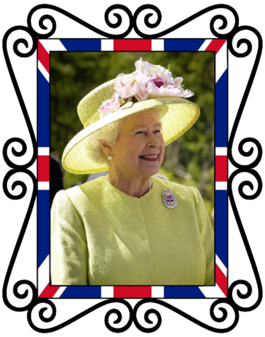
Ex. E: Wie heißt er? Wie heißt sie? Below are pictures of several well-known personalities. *Wie heißen diese Menschen*? Answer using a complete sentence.

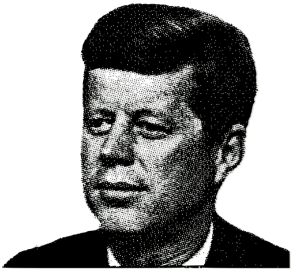
diese Menschen = these people



1.

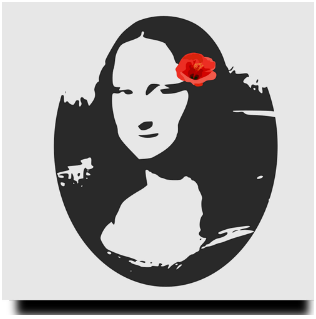
4.

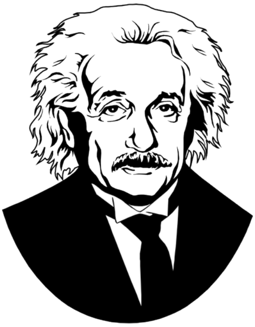




2.

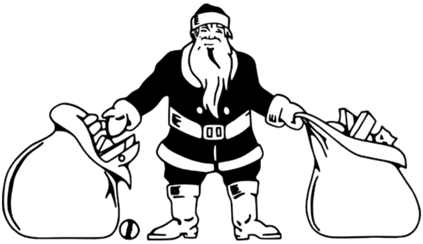
5.





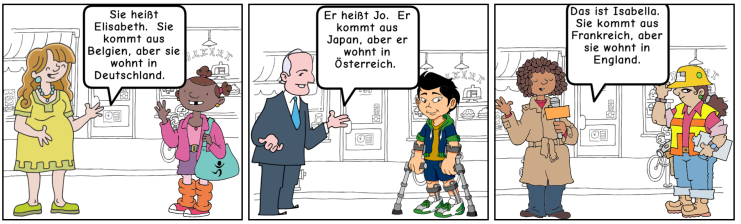
3.

6.



We can take it one step further to use “er” and “sie” with the verbs “kommen” and “wohnen.”

Er kommt aus Kanada.	He comes from Canada.
Sie kommt aus Deutschland.	She comes from Germany.
Er wohnt in Berlin.	He lives in Berlin.
Sie wohnt in Zürich.	She lives in Zürich.


Sie heißt Elisabeth. Sie kommt aus Belgien, aber sie wohnt in Deutschland.
Er heißt Jo. Er kommt aus Japan, aber er wohnt in Österreich.
Das ist Isabella. Sie kommt aus Frankreich, aber sie wohnt in England.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. F: **Woher kommen diese Leute? Wo wohnen sie?** Using the cues below, write sentences describing where these people come from and where they now live.

Beispiel: Daniel, Australien, Japan.

Daniel kommt aus Australien, aber er wohnt in Japan.

(Daniel comes from Australia, but he lives in Japan.)

1. Jutta, Deutschland, Belgien
2. Marco, Argentinien, Finnland
3. Sophie, Frankreich, Italien
4. Katja, Luxemburg, Spanien
5. Peter, Deutschland, Irland
6. Erika, Österreich, Amerika
7. Konstantin, Russland, Polen
8. Eduardo, Mexiko, Guatemala

Test your listening comprehension with this simple dialog. (Audio courtesy of “Deutsch Dialog . Ich bin Peter” by Ariser is licensed under CC BY-SA 3.0.)

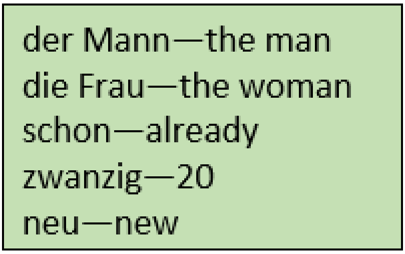
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-113

Test your listening comprehension. (Courtesy of Dr. Claudia Kost, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=482#h5p-64

Ex. G: Dialogue. Read the following dialogue aloud. Then answer the questions about them in complete sentences.



der Mann—the man
die Frau—the woman
schon—already
zwanzig—20
neu—new

Frau: Guten Tag!
Mann: Guten Tag!
Frau: Ich bin Rita. Und Sie? Wie heißen Sie?
Mann: Ich heiße Frank.
Frau: Freut mich! Ich bin neu hier. Ich komme aus München, aber jetzt wohne ich in Stuttgart.
Mann: Echt? Ich komme auch aus München, aber ich wohne schon zwanzig Jahre hier.

1. Wie heißt die Frau?
2. Wie heißt der Mann?
3. Woher kommt die Frau?
4. Woher kommt der Mann?
5. Wo wohnt die Frau jetzt?
6. Wo wohnt der Mann?

EXTRA PRACTICE with greetings, names, countries, verbs "heißen/kommen/sein," asking how someone is, and du vs. Sie.

- https://a1.vhs-lernportal.de/wws/9.php#/wws/home.php.

You will need to set up an account (free!), and click on the A1 course. Click on the tab to change the site interface to English if you wish…or try it in German. Each lesson includes written, listening, and speaking exercises with fill-in-the-blank or multiple-choice questions.

2. Section 1-2

1-2: Definite Articles; Possession

Here are several objects that you might find in your classroom. Notice that they all begin with the definite article–*der*, *die*, or *das*. All of these mean *the* in English. Like many foreign languages, German nouns have a particular grammatical gender. It is best to learn new words together with the definite article.

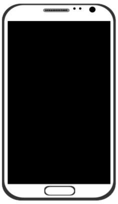
der
die } THE
das

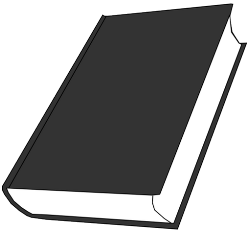
der (masculine)
die (feminine)
das (neuter)

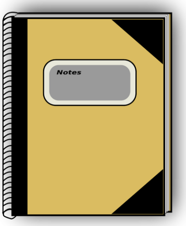
der Tisch
die Tür
das Heft

Nouns in German are always capitalized! The definite article (der/die/das) is always lowercase unless it is at the beginning of a sentence. Always capitalize the first word of each sentence.

What's a noun? A noun is a word that refers to a person, place, thing, or idea.



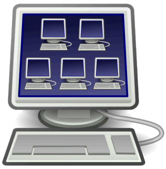


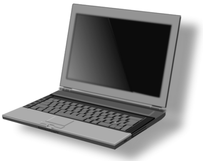


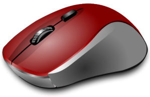
1 2 3 4

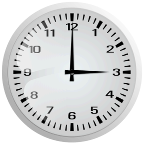
5 6

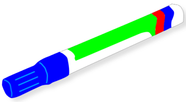
1. der Kugelschreiber (der Kuli)
2. das Papier
3. der Bleistift (der Stift)
4. das Handy
5. das Buch
6. das Heft

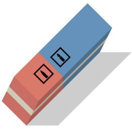






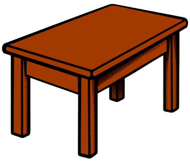


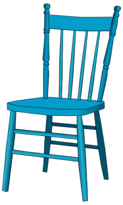


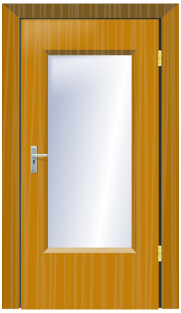


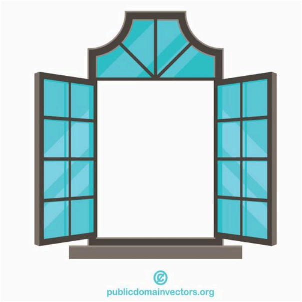
7 8 9 10 11 12

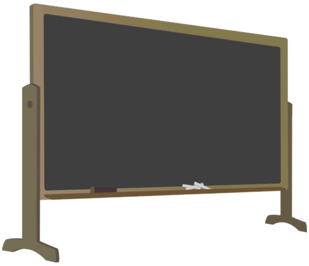
7. der Computer
8. der/das Laptop
9. die Maus
10. die Uhr
11. der Filzstift
12. der Radiergummi (der Gummi)





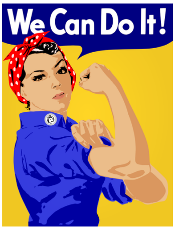


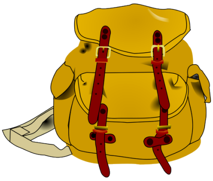

publicdomainvectors.org

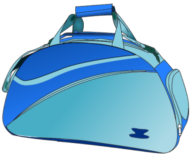


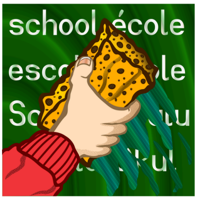
13 14 15 16 17

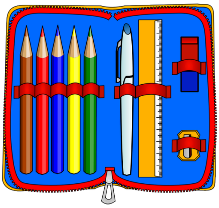
13. der Tisch
14. der Stuhl
15. die Tür
16. das Fenster
17. die Tafel





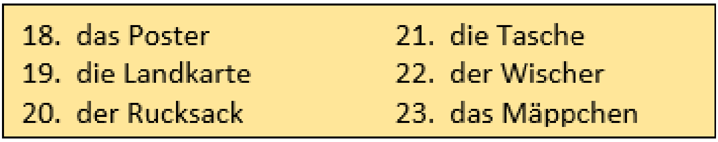



school
école

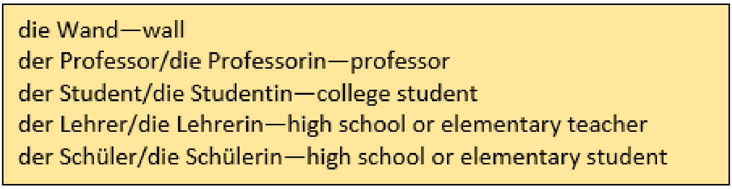


18 19 20 21

22 23



18. das Poster
19. die Landkarte
20. der Rucksack
21. die Tasche
22. der Wischer
23. das Mäppchen

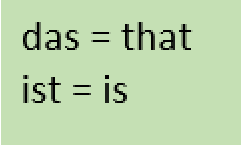


die Wand—wall
der Professor/die Professorin—professor
der Student/die Studentin—college student
der Lehrer/die Lehrerin—high school or elementary teacher
der Schüler/die Schülerin—high school or elementary student

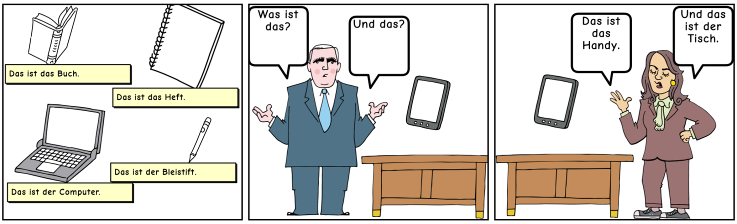
Ex. A: Was ist das? Ask each other about the items in your classroom. Don't forget to include the definite article (der/die/das)! (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Galaxy151, Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International).

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#audio-484-1

A: Was ist das? (What is that?)
B: Das ist die Tasche.



das = that
ist = is


Das ist das Buch.
Das ist das Heft.
Das ist der Bleistift.
Das ist der Computer.
Was ist das?
Und das?
Das ist das Handy.
Und das ist der Tisch.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-2

KULTURECKE: Watch *Deutsch im Blick*'s video of a store that sells common school supplies. You will hear several new classroom words from this section. (Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#video-484-1

EXTRA PRACTICE: Click the link on Germanzone.org's website to do more online practice with definite articles and classroom objects. The site will give you feedback on your mistakes.

- https://www.germanzone.org/noun-genders-1-classroom-objects/.

Or try Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) extra practice activity to learn the gender of the classroom words:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-80

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-3

EXTRA PRACTICE: Need more practice with predicting patterns of a word's gender? Click the link to Germanzone.org's online quiz that will give you feedback: https://www.germanzone.org/noun-genders-3/.

LISTENING PRACTICE: (Audio courtesy of Light Bulb Languages, https://www.lightbulblanguages.co.uk/.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#audio-484-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-126

Possessive of proper names:

To show possession with proper names in German, add an -s to the end of the person's name. If the name already ends in an -s or an "s" sound, such as -z or -ß, we add a comma to the end.

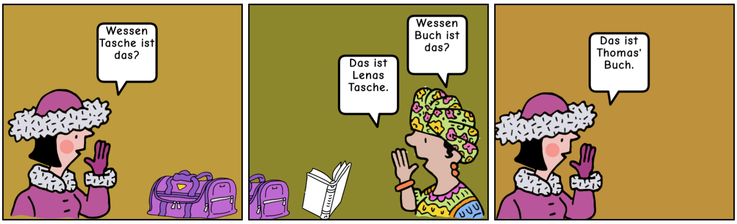
Ist das **Melanies** Buch?

Ritas Handy ist neu.

Reiners Computer ist kaputt.

Thomas' Rucksack ist zu groß.

kaputt—worn out, broken down
groß—big, tall
neu—new

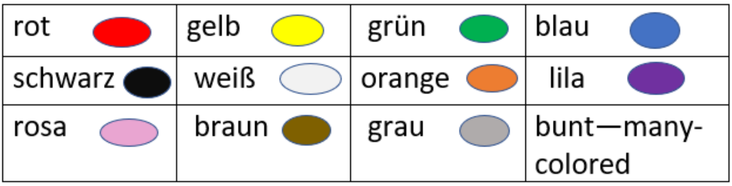

Wessen Tasche ist das?
Das ist Lenas Tasche.
Wessen Buch ist das?
Das ist Thomas' Buch.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-4

Farben (colors)

Below are several colors that will help you describe objects with the definite articles you have already learned.



rot 🔴	gelb 🟡	grün 🟢	blau 🔵
schwarz ⚫	weiß ⚪	orange 🟠	lila 🟣
rosa ●	braun 🟤	grau ●	bunt—many-colored

Listen to Light Bulb Languages pronouncing the colors. (Source: https://www.lightbulblanguages.co.uk/

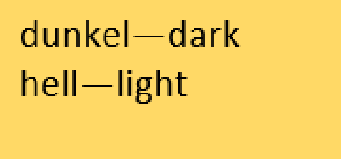
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#audio-484-3

To express different shades of these, use *dunkel*– or *hell*– affixed to the color. Do not add a space between the words.

dunkel + rot = dunkelrot
hell + blau = hellblau

Beispiel:

- Der Bleistift ist gelb.
- Die Uhr ist schwarz und weiß.
- Das Heft ist dunkelgrau.
- Das Buch ist hellgrün.



dunkel—dark
hell—light

"German flag" by fdecomite is marked with CC BY 2.0.

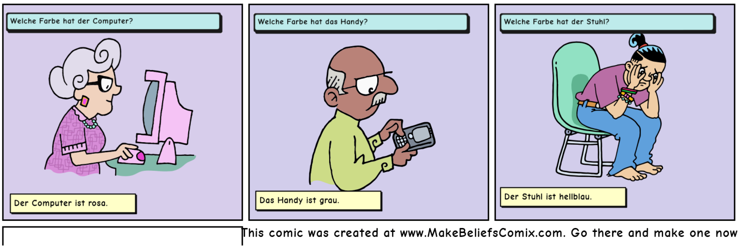
Die deutsche Fahne ist schwarz, rot und gold.

Ex. E: Welche Farbe hat das? Ask each other about the colors of the items in your classroom.

A: Welche Farbe hat das Poster?

B: Das Poster ist hellblau, gelb und rosa.

welche Farbe—which color/what color


Welche Farbe hat der Computer?
Der Computer ist rosa.
Welche Farbe hat das Handy?
Das Handy ist grau.
Welche Farbe hat der Stuhl?
Der Stuhl ist hellblau.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video. Need more examples? Watch Benjamin-der Deutschleher's video to hear the colors pronounced with lots of examples:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#oembed-1

Or use Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) flashcard examples and activities to help you learn colors:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-70

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-71

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#h5p-72

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website and do the online activities to describe the colors of each item you see. Although you may not recognize every word in the exercise, most of them are very much like English. When in doubt, use a dictionary to look it up.

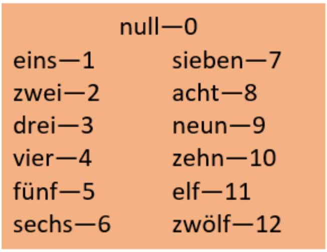
- https://www.germanzone.org/german-colors-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/german-colors-2/.

Watch this Youtube video with examples of the colors *rot* and *grün*:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=484#oembed-2

3. Section 1-3

1-3: Numbers and Pronunciation



null—0

eins—1
zwei—2
drei—3
vier—4
fünf—5
sechs—6

sieben—7
acht—8
neun—9
zehn—10
elf—11
zwölf—12

You will see several of the major vowel combinations in the German language in these numbers.

ei → pronounced like English “i”.

ie → pronounced like English “e”.

Why? Because when these two vowels go a’walking, the second does the talking.

Click the link to do some online listening practice with “ei” and “ie.”

https://www.germanzone.org/sounds-german-ei-ie/.

- eu → pronounced like the “oy” in the English word “toy.”
- ö → pronounced like the “ur” in the English word “turn” but without the r-sound.
- ü → pronounced like the “ew” in the English word “few” but with lips rounded and less of the w-sound.

There are also several consonants in these numbers that have different sounds from those in English.

- z → pronounced like the “ts” sound at the end of the English word “cats.”
- s → pronounced like an English “z” at the beginning of a word.
- v → pronounced like an English “f”.
- w → pronounced like an English “v”.

Ex. A: Aussprache. Practice each sound by saying the following words out loud. Refer to the pronunciation guide if you forget how they sound.

1. ei → eins, zwei, drei, heißen, Bleistift, Kugelschreiber, Einstein
2. ie → vier, sieben, Papier, Radiergummi
3. eu → neun, Euro, Feuer, teuer
4. ö → zwölf, Töchter, könnte
5. ü → fünf, Stück, München
6. z → zehn, zwölf, zwanzig
7. s → sechs, sieben, Rucksack, singen
8. v → vier, viel, von
9. w → was, wie, wo, wohin, zwölf

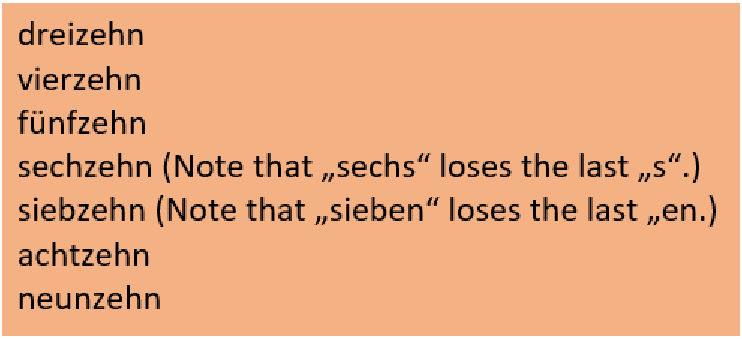
Deutsche Musik! Want to practice numbers 1-10 with Mo-Do's German hit song from the 90s? The lyrics are inside the video.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-1

Or if you're a Rammstein fan, their song Sonne (2001) also has numbers 1-10: https://youtu.be/YtEWoavDlcM?si=OEzo7m7Q-JV8alFP

Numbers past 12 are similar to English. In English, we add –*teen* to the end of numbers 1-9. In German, we add –*zehn* to the end. Note a few minor spelling changes in the chart below.

13: drei + zehn = dreizehn
14: vier + zehn = vierzehn



dreizehn
vierzehn
fünfzehn
sechzehn (Note that „sechs“ loses the last „s“.)
siebzehn (Note that „sieben“ loses the last „en.)
achtzehn
neunzehn

Listen to Light Bulb Languages pronounce numbers 1-20 below (https://www.lightbulblanguages.co.uk/)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-1

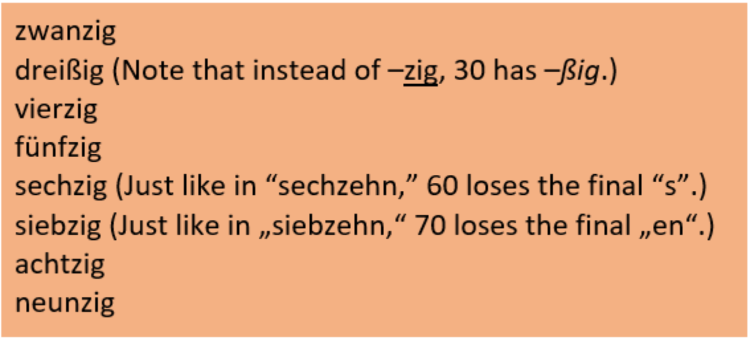
Numbers above 19:

For two-digit numbers above nineteen, most German numbers add –*zig*, which is equivalent to the English suffix –*ty* with numbers. Note a few minor spelling changes in the chart below.

80: acht + zig = achtzig
90: neun + zig = neunzig

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-2

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Kampy, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported.)

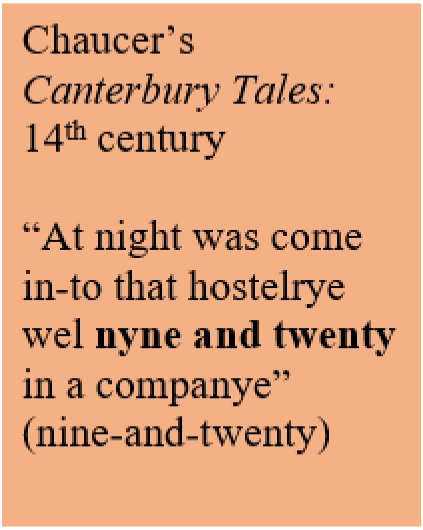

zwanzig
dreißig (Note that instead of –zig, 30 has –*ßig*.)
vierzig
fünfzig
sechzig (Just like in “sechzehn,” 60 loses the final “s”.)
siebzig (Just like in „siebzehn,“ 70 loses the final „en“.)
achtzig
neunzig

Pronunciation of 30 with its-*ßig* ending instead of –*zig*. (Courtesy of Wikimedia user kampy, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-3

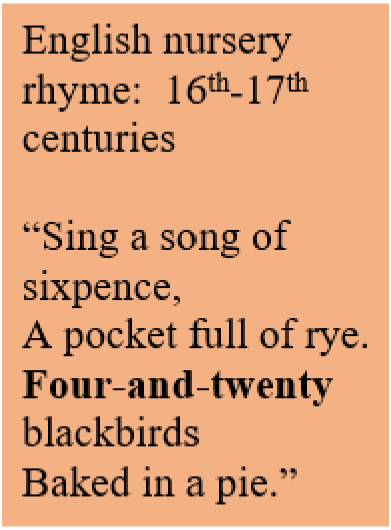
Compound numbers:

German compound numbers are constructed much like English numbers were hundreds of years ago.



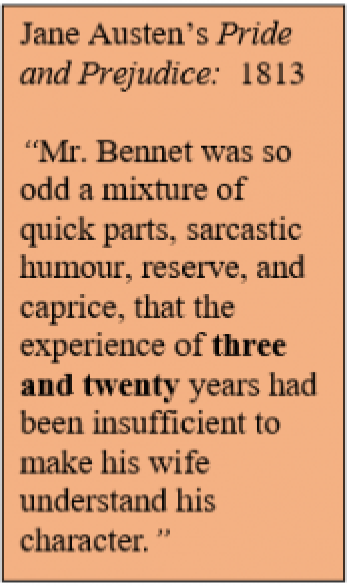
Chaucer's
Canterbury Tales:
14th century

"At night was come in-to that hostelrye wel **nyne and twenty** in a companye" (nine-and-twenty)



English nursery rhyme: 16th-17th centuries

"Sing a song of sixpence,
A pocket full of rye.
Four-and-twenty blackbirds
Baked in a pie."



Jane Austen's *Pride and Prejudice:* 1813

"Mr. Bennet was so odd a mixture of quick parts, sarcastic humour, reserve, and caprice, that the experience of **three and twenty** years had been insufficient to make his wife understand his character."

For 29, you would have "nine and twenty," or *neunundzwanzig* in German.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-4

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user joni, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported.)

21 → einundzwanzig (one and twenty)
22 → zweiundzwanzig (two and twenty)
23 → dreiundzwanzig (three and twenty)

…etc.

31 → einunddreißig (one and thirty)
32 → zweiunddreißig (two and thirty)

…etc.

Note that German does NOT have a space between the individual numbers. Write them all together as one long word.

To hear numbers 11-100 being pronounced, watch YourGermanTeacher's video:

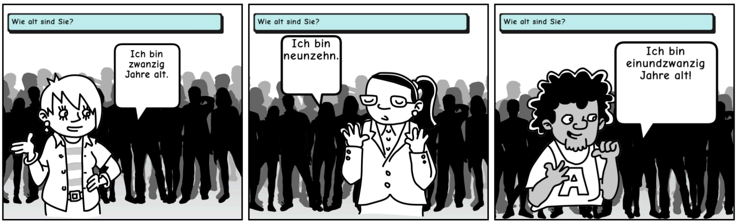
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#h5p-5

If you want more practice with double-digit numbers, click the link below and then on “Start Test.” The program will grade your answers: https://german.net/vocabulary/lists/numbers-to-100/

Saying Your Age:

To say how old you are, use the phrase *Ich bin* ______ plus your age.


Wie alt sind Sie?
Ich bin zwanzig Jahre alt.
Wie alt sind Sie?
Ich bin neunzehn.
Wie alt sind Sie?
Ich bin einundzwanzig Jahre alt!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

QUICK LISTENING PRACTICE: Listen to Nora and Marla introducing themselves. *Wie alt sind sie*? *Woher kommen sie*? (Audio courtesy of AudioLingua.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-5

Watch Coffeebreak German’s video to see some examples of people saying how old they are.

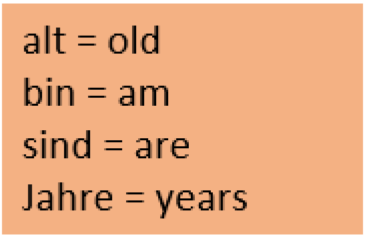
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-3

Ex. C: Wie alt sind Sie? How old are you? Ask your classmates.

A: Wie alt sind Sie?

B: Ich bin ___________.

(Variation: Ich bin _____ Jahre alt.)


alt = old
bin = am
sind = are
Jahre = years

Now try this quick listening activity to hear a conversation with numbers. (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Xzapro4 & Erkan Yilmaz, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported, 2.5 Generic, 2.0 Generic and 1.0 Generic license.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-6

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#h5p-118

Video. Watch *Easy German*'s video to hear numbers 1-100 spoken aloud with examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-4

Try Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) review of double-digit numbers:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#h5p-65

Hundreds and thousands are expressed in German much like in English. You'll need the words *hundert* (hundred) and *tausend* (thousand.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-7

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-8

[Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user kampy, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported.)

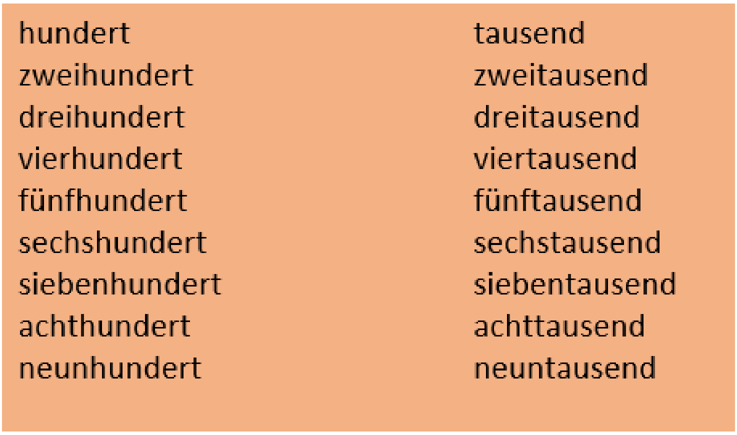
Once again, do not leave a space between individual numbers. Put them all together to make one long word.

4000: vier + tausend = viertausend

800: acht + hundert = achthundert

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-9

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Frank C. Müller Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)



hundert	tausend
zweihundert	zweitausend
dreihundert	dreitausend
vierhundert	viertausend
fünfhundert	fünftausend
sechshundert	sechstausend
siebenhundert	siebentausend
achthundert	achttausend
neunhundert	neuntausend

If you have a particularly long number, take it in steps.

Beispiel: 7529
Step 1: siebentausend
Step 2: fünfhundert
Step 3: neunundzwanzig

Now put it together: siebentausendfünfhundertneunundzwanzig

Like many German words, numbers are compound words without any spaces in between.

→ sieben|tausend|fünf|hundert|neun|und|zwanzig

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#h5p-6

Watch Graf Zahl (the Count) from German *Sesamstrasse* counting his money at the bank:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-5

EXTRA LISTENING PRACTICE:

- Click on the link to Germanzone.org's website to do the listening activity. Choose the number you hear read aloud: https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-zahlen/.
- Click the link to do Germanzone.org's online listening activity. You will hear several simple multiplication problems read aloud. Choose the answer that best corresponds to the answer: https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-einmaleins/.

  Beispiel: drei mal neun
  → 3 x 9 = 27 (siebenundzwanzig)

- Click the link to do Germanzone.org's matching activity with numbers: https://www.germanzone.org/german-numbers-2/
- **Wie viel Euro macht das?** Click the link to do Germanzone.org's activity using Euros:

https://www.germanzone.org/german-numbers-1-wie-viel-euro/.

Larger Numbers

If you wish to make higher numbers, follow the pattern you see in English.

forty thousand→*vierzigtausend*
eighty-three thousand→*dreiundachtzigtausend*

“File:Deutschland politisch 2010.png” by C. Busch, Hamburg is marked with CC BY-SA 3.0.

Deutschland hat über 83 Millionen Einwohner.

Listen to Max Giesinger’s song, 80 *Millionen*, to practice numbers.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-6

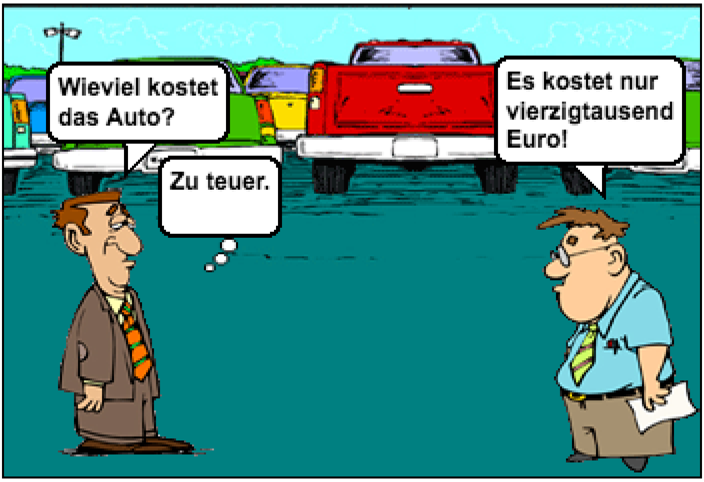
In Germany, the comma and decimal point are switched.

Amerika	Deutschland
49,000	49.000
$36.99	€36,99
$4,999.99	€4.999,99

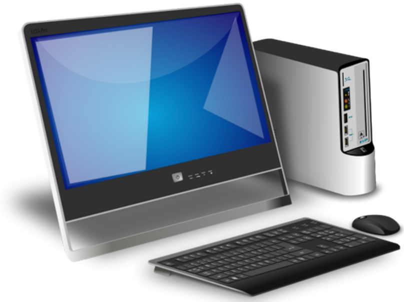
Reading out prices works a lot like in English:

$4.65→*four dollars sixty-five cents* OR *four sixty-five.*

€4,65→*vier Euro fünfundsechzig* (*Cent*) OR *vier fünfundsechzig*.


Wieviel kostet das Auto?
Zu teuer.
Es kostet nur vierzigtausend Euro!

Ex. E: Wieviel kostet das? Using the items below and the prices, write a complete sentence to describe how much each item costs.

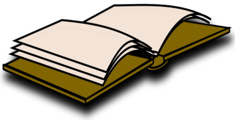


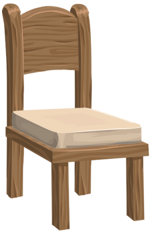
Beispiel: €900.

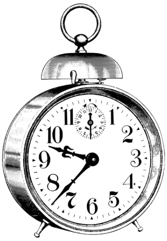
→*Der Computer kostet neunhundert Euro.*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#audio-486-10

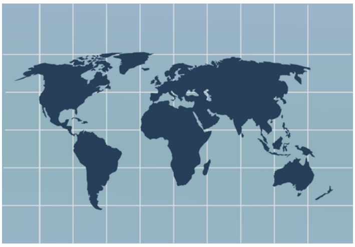
(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

1.  €17,99

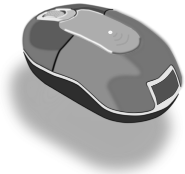
5.  €44,99

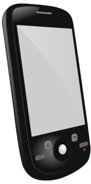
2.  €5,50

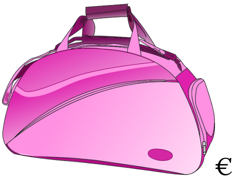
6.

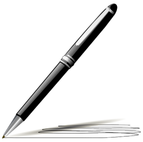


€25

3.  €4,75

7.  €800,59

4.  €158

8.  €1,77

To see a brief review on how to say how much something costs, watch Anja's video.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#oembed-7

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#h5p-7

KULTURECKE: Finally, check out *Deutsch im Blick*'s video to see what it's like going through the checkout counter at a German grocery store. Did you notice any differences from shopping in your own country? *Wie viel kostet das?*

(Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=486#video-486-1

Ex. G: Dialog. Read the dialog that takes place in a store and answer the questions.

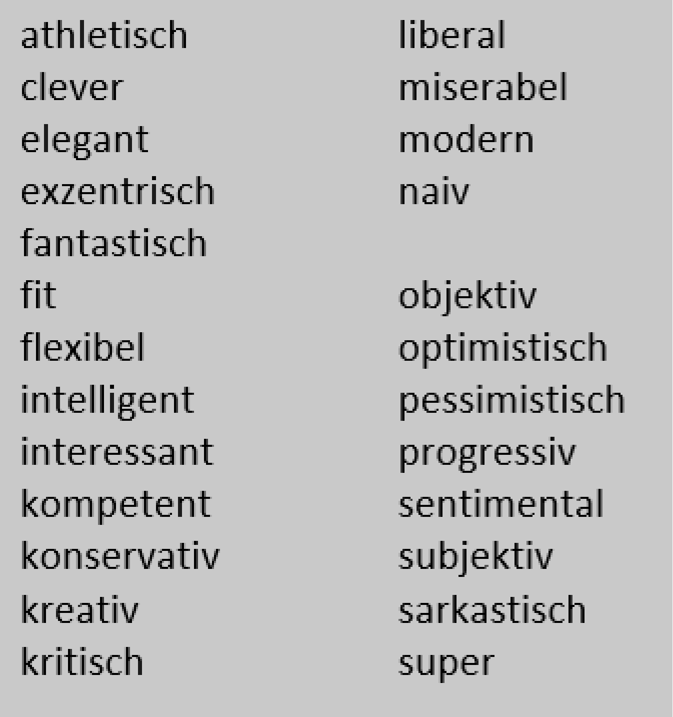
- A: Guten Tag.
- B: Guten Tag.
- A: Kann ich Ihnen helfen? (Can I help you?)
- B: Ja. Wieviel kostet der Stuhl?
- A: Der Stuhl? Achtzig Euro fünfzig.
- B: Und der Tisch? Wieviel kostet er?
- A: Der Tisch kostet zweihundert.
- B: Das ist aber teuer!

1. Wieviel kostet der Stuhl?
2. Wieviel kostet der Tisch?
3. Wieviel kosten 4 Stühle?
4. Wieviel kosten 2 Tische?

4. Section 1-4

1-4: Adjectives and Negation

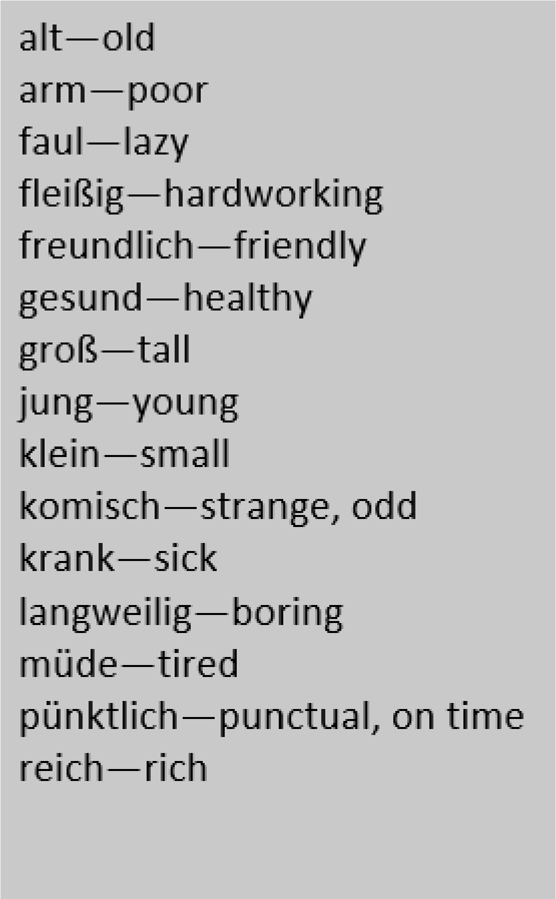
Many German adjectives that you might use to describe yourself are similar to English. The left-hand column lists several of these that you should easily be able to recognize without a dictionary. The right-hand column lists some that might not be as easy to understand at first glance.



athletisch
clever
elegant
exzentrisch
fantastisch
fit
flexibel
intelligent
interessant
kompetent
konservativ
kreativ
kritisch

liberal
miserabel
modern
naiv

objektiv
optimistisch
pessimistisch
progressiv
sentimental
subjektiv
sarkastisch
super

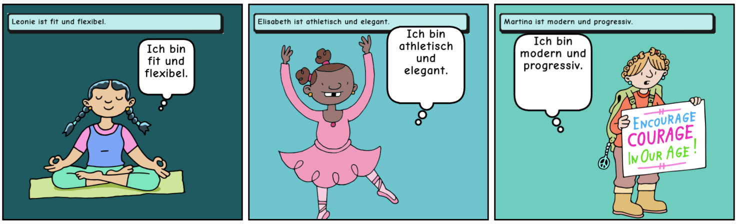


alt—old
arm—poor
faul—lazy
fleißig—hardworking
freundlich—friendly
gesund—healthy
groß—tall
jung—young
klein—small
komisch—strange, odd
krank—sick
langweilig—boring
müde—tired
pünktlich—punctual, on time
reich—rich

Ich bin optimistisch, exzentrisch und fleißig.

English negates adjectives by placing the word “not” in front of them. Similarly, German does this as well with the word *nicht*. Place *nicht* in front of an adjective to negate it.

Ich bin ***nicht*** *faul.* I am not lazy.


Leonie ist fit und flexibel.
Ich bin fit und flexibel.
Elisabeth ist athletisch und elegant.
Ich bin athletisch und elegant.
Martina ist modern und progressiv.
Ich bin modern und progressiv.
ENCOURAGE COURAGE IN OUR AGE!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video: *Negation of Adjectives*. Click to watch me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#oembed-1

Ex. A: Beschreiben Sie sich! (Describe yourself!) Describe yourself using the adjectives above. For example, if you are sick, you might say, “Ich bin krank.” If you are tired, you might say, “Ich bin müde.” Fill in the blanks with your own description.

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia users Galaxy151 and Jeuwre, respectively, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#audio-488-1

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#audio-488-2

Ich bin ___________, ___________ und __________.

Ich bin nicht _____________.

To make simple yes/no questions, German puts the verb first, just like in English.

Sind Sie sarkastisch?	**Are** you sarcastic?
Ist der Computer neu?	**Is** the computer new?

Video: *Making yes/no questions in German*. Click the link to watch me reteaching this concept.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#oembed-2

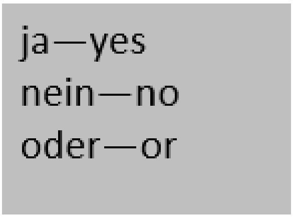
Ex. B: Now ask your classmates about themselves using the adjectives above.

A: Bist du ____(adjective)_______?

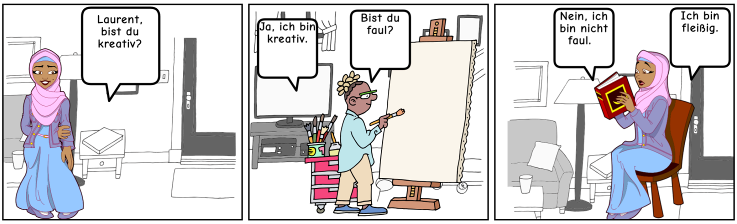
B: Ja, ich bin ___________.

ODER

B: Nein, ich bin nicht __________.



ja—yes
nein—no
oder—or



Laurent, bist du kreativ?
Ja, ich bin kreativ.
Bist du faul?
Nein, ich bin nicht faul.
Ich bin fleißig.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

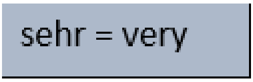
Listen to Jasmin Wagner's song, Du bist nicht allein, (2021), to hear an example of *nicht* + adjective.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#oembed-3

Lyrics: https://www.lyrics.com/lyric-lf/5520527/Jasmin+Wagner/Du+bist+nicht+allein

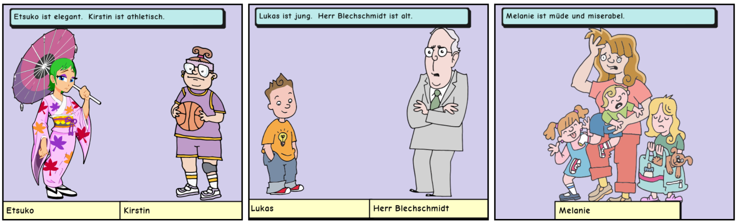
You can use these adjectives to describe other people as well.

Beispiel:



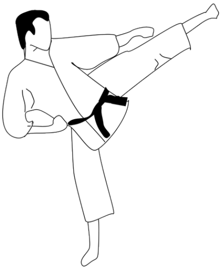
sehr = very

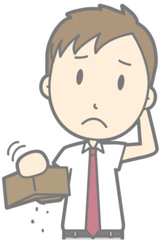
• Martin ist pessimistisch.	(Martin is pessimistic.)
• Sabine ist müde.	(Sabine is tired.)
• Er ist komisch.	(He is strange/odd.)
• Sie ist sehr kritisch.	(She is very critical.)

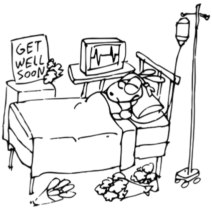

Etsuko ist elegant. Kirstin ist athletisch.
Etsuko
Kirstin
Lukas ist jung. Herr Blechschmidt ist alt.
Lukas
Herr Blechschmidt
Melanie ist müde und miserabel.
Melanie

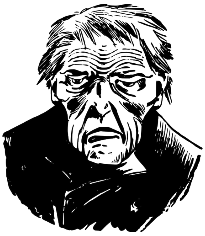
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

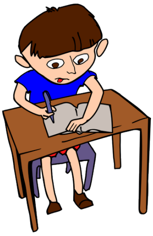
Ex. C: **Beschreiben Sie diese Menschen!** Using the adjectives above, describe these people using complete sentences.


1.

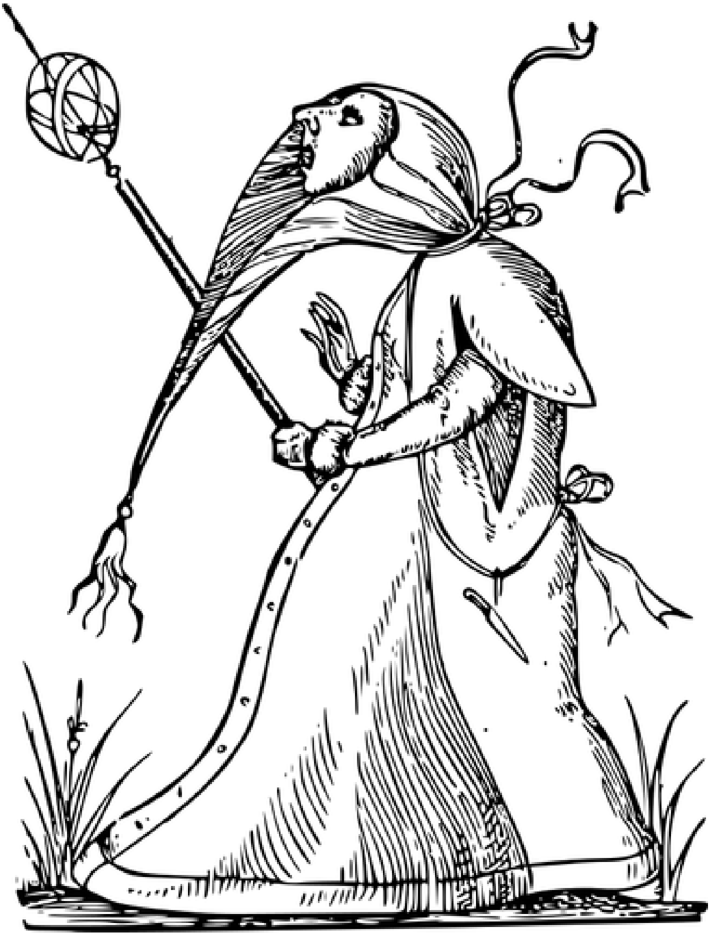

2.

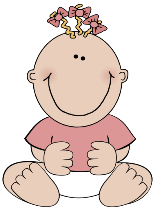

GET WELL SOON
3.

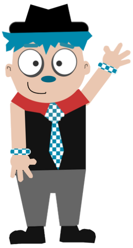

6.

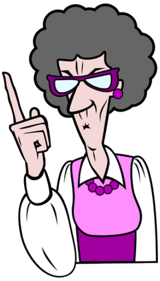

7.

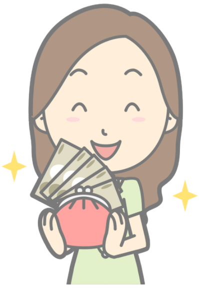
8.



4. 

9. 

5. 

10. 

Want more adjectives? Click the links below for a lo-o-o-ng list of adjectives. Many of them are like English.

- https://german.net/vocabulary/lists/character/
- https://german.net/vocabulary/lists/adjectives/

Listen to Glasperlenspiel's song, *Ich bin ich*, (2011), to hear lots of examples of adjectives.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#oembed-4

Songtext: https://www.lyrix.at/t/glasperlenspiel-ich-bin-ich-11d

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#h5p-8

EXTRA ADJECTIVES: Try this matching activity (courtesy of Claudia

Kost and Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta) to review adjectives and learn a few new ones.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=488#h5p-104

Ex. E: Lesen wir! Read the following paragraph and answer the questions about it in complete sentences.

Hannelore ist neunzehn Jahre alt. Sie kommt aus Österreich, aber sie wohnt in Deutschland. Sie wohnt schon drei Jahre in Deutschland. Hannelore denkt, die Deutschen sind sehr freundlich. Hannelore ist kreativ und fleißig. Sie ist auch sehr modern; ihr (her) Handy ist neu. Hannelores Freund heißt Carlos. Carlos ist einundzwanzig und kommt aus Spanien. Er wohnt schon vier Jahre in Deutschland. Er denkt, die Deutschen sind zu kritisch. Er ist auch intelligent aber manchmal (sometimes) faul. Carlos' Handy ist sehr alt und kaputt.

1. Wie alt ist Hannelore?
2. Woher kommt Hannelore?
3. Wo wohnt Hannelore?
4. Wie lange wohnt sie in Deutschland?
5. Wie findet* Hannelore die Deutschen? *finds/thinks of
6. Beschreiben* Sie Hannelore! *Describe
7. Beschreiben Sie Hannelores Handy!
8. Wie heißt Hannelores Freund?
9. Wie alt ist er?
10. Woher kommt er?
11. Wo wohnt er?
12. Wie lange wohnt er in Deutschland?
13. Wie findet Carlos die Deutschen?
14. Beschreiben Sie Carlos!

15. Beschreiben Sie Carlos‘ Handy!

German Games. If you like learning German through games, try this link to find many vocabulary-themed games:
https://www.german-games.net/

5. Section 1-5

1-5: Pronouns in the Nominative Case

You have already learned the pronouns *ich*, *du*, and *Sie*. Here are the rest of the nominative case pronouns.

The **nominative case** refers to subject pronouns—those pronouns that refer to the person or thing doing the action of the sentence. They usually come at the beginning of a sentence (but not always!!!) In future chapters, you will learn other cases, but for now, know that "nominative" refers to the subject of the sentence.

Singular	Plural
ich—I	wir—we
du—you (familiar)	ihr—you (plural, familiar); y'all
er—he sie—she es—it	sie—they Sie—you (formal)

Notes on capitalization:

The word "ich" is **never** capitalized, as it is in English, unless it is at the beginning of a sentence.

- Du und **ich** kommen aus Nordamerika.
- **Ich** wohne in Aachen.

The formal way of saying "you," *Sie*, is ALWAYS capitalized, no matter where it is in the sentence because it shows respect.

- Kommen **Sie** aus Kanada?
- Frau Schmidt, **Sie** wohnen in Stuttgart.

Listen to Franzi Harmsen's song, *Nein*, 2021, to hear examples of the pronouns ich and du as well as a few numbers you learned in Section 1-3.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#oembed-1

Watch Learn German's video to see a detailed explanation of German pronouns in the nominative case.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#oembed-2

What is a pronoun? A pronoun is a word that is substituted in for a noun.

We often substitute nouns for pronouns in everyday speech.

A: Is **the pencil** new? B: Yes, **it** is new.

In the above example, we substituted in "it" for "the pencil." In German, however, we must look at the grammatical gender of the word to pick the correct pronoun.

A: Ist **der Bleistift** neu? B: Ja, **er** ist neu.

- der Tisch→er (How to remember: rhymes with „der")
- die Tafel→sie (How to remember: rhymes with „die")
- das Fenster→es (How to remember: shares an "s" at the end of both words)

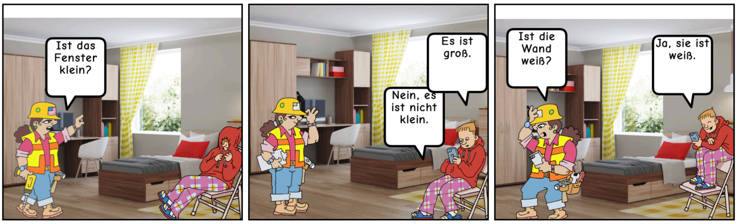
The easiest way to do this is to look at the definite article (der/die/

das). It will tell you which pronoun to use. It may seem strange to refer to *der Kuli*, a pen, for example, as "he," but in German, it sounds normal.

Video. *Replacing Nouns with Pronouns*. Watch the video to see me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#oembed-3

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#h5p-9


Ist das Fenster klein?
Es ist groß.
Nein, es ist nicht klein.
Ist die Wand weiß?
Ja, sie ist weiß.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. B: Ja oder nein? Using the items and adjectives below, ask your partner several questions. Your partner must substitute with a pronoun to answer. (If you can't remember the definite article for each noun, look back to section 1-3.)

Beispiel: Uhr, schwarz

A: Ist die Uhr schwarz?
B: Nein, sie ist nicht schwarz. Sie ist grau.
A: Ist der Professor groß?

B: Ja, er ist groß.

1. Tisch, braun
2. Heft, rot
3. Wand, weiß
4. Poster, groß
5. Buch, langweilig
6. Kuli, alt
7. Landkarte, bunt
8. Computer, neu
9. Student, interessant

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#h5p-10

Try Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) pronoun activity for extra practice and instant feedback:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=490#h5p-79

EXTRA PRACTICE: The following activities will give you more practice and instant feedback using personal pronouns.

- https://www.germanzone.org/personal-pronouns-er-sie-es-

sie/.

- https://www.germanzone.org/personal-pronouns-sie-du-ihr/.

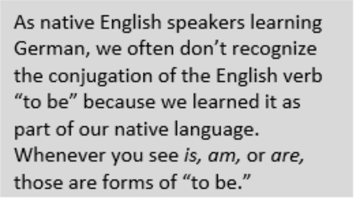
6. Section 1-6

1–6: The Verb "sein"

So far, you have been using the German verb "sein" to describe people and things.

sein = to be

Sein is one of the two most important verbs in the German language. You will use it in future chapters to make compound verb tenses. For now, you will learn it in the present tense.



As native English speakers learning German, we often don't recognize the conjugation of the English verb "to be" because we learned it as part of our native language. Whenever you see *is, am,* or *are,* those are forms of "to be."

In German, *sein* is an irregular verb, which means you must memorize its conjugation.

sein—to be

ich bin—I am	wir sind—we are
du bist—you are (informal)	ihr seid—you (plural) are; y'all are
er/sie/es ist—he/she/it is	sie/Sie sind—they are; you (polite)

Beispiele: The verb form of „sein" is highlighted below. Notice that the subject, i.e. the person or thing doing the action, is the word that determines which form of "sein" you will use. The subject is in italics, and the verb is bold-faced.

• *Ich* **bin** nicht pünktlich.	(*I* **am** not punctual.)
• *Du* **bist** sehr freundlich.	(*You* **are** very friendly.)
• *Er* **ist** Professor.	(*He* **is** a professor.)
• *Sie* **ist** Lehrerin.	(*She* **is** a teacher.)
• *Es* **ist** kalt.	(*It* **is** cold.)
• *Wir* **sind** nicht sehr groß.	(*We* **are** not very tall.)

- *Ihr* **seid** progressiv. (*You guys/y'all* **are** progressive.)
- *Sie* **sind** athletisch. (*They* **are** athletic.)

Watch this clip from *The Empire Strikes Back* (in German) to hear Darth Vader's famous line in German, which uses the verb *sein*:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-1

Video. Conjugation of the verb "sein." Watch the video to see me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#h5p-11

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#h5p-12

Video. *Easy German: Sein.* For more examples with the verb „sein,“ watch the video below. It includes more than we will learn in chapter 1. The first 1:40 of the video covers what we have done in class so far. If you're feeling brave, you can watch the whole video!

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-3

Listen to Frida Gold's song, 6 Billlionen (2013), to hear lots of examples of the verb sein conjugated.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-4

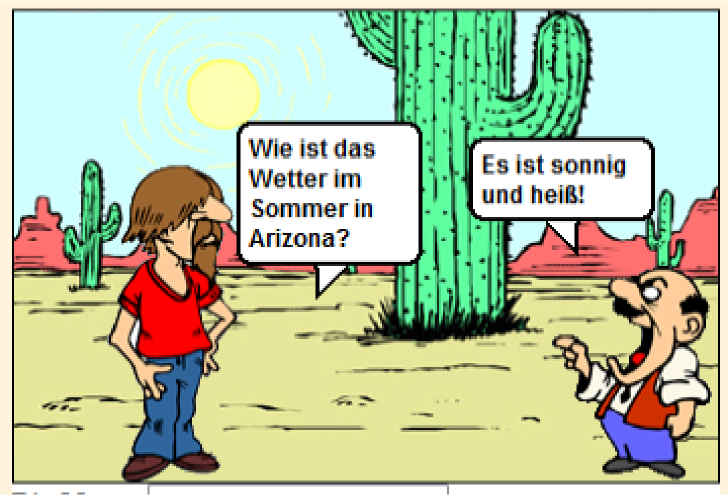
Das Wetter

You can also use the verb *sein* to describe the weather.

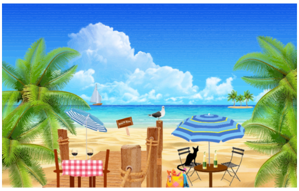
A: Wie ist das Wetter im Winter in Berlin?

B: Es ist meistens kalt.

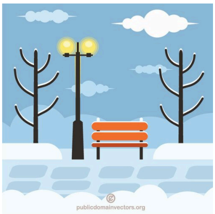
kalt—cold
heiß—hot
kühl—cool
warm—warm
windig—windy
regnerisch—rainy
neblig—foggy
sonnig—sunny
wolkig—cloudy
schlecht—bad
heiter—clear
gut—good
meistens—mostly


Wie ist das Wetter im Sommer in Arizona?
Es ist sonnig und heiß!

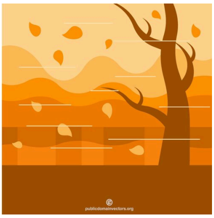
Ex. C: Wie ist das Wetter? Using the cues provided, describe the weather using complete sentences.

Beispiel: 

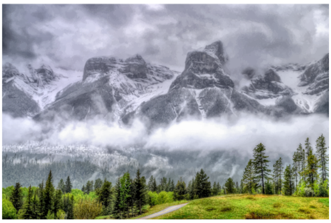
→Es ist heiß und wolkig.

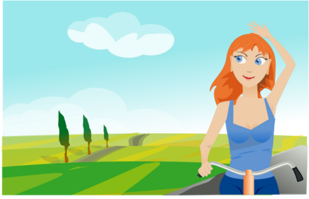
1. 

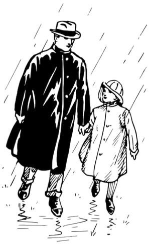
publicdomainvectors.org

2. 

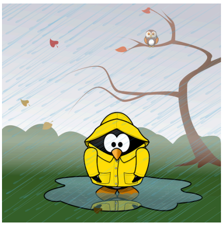
publicdomainvectors.org

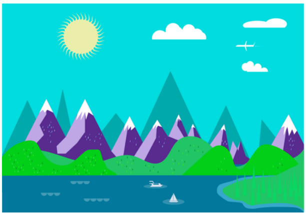


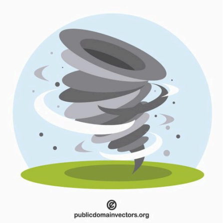
3. 

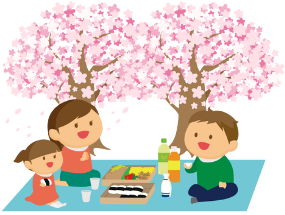
6. 

7.

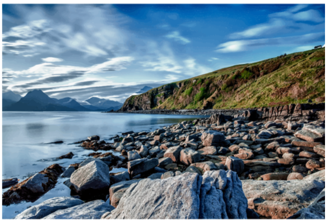
8. 

4. 

9. 

5. 

10.

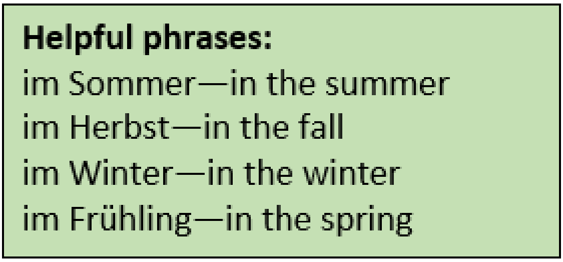


Ex. D: Video. *Easy German. The Weather*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-5

Watch the video and answer the following questions about the weather around the world. Some questions have **more than one correct answer**.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#h5p-34



Helpful phrases:
im Sommer—in the summer
im Herbst—in the fall
im Winter—in the winter
im Frühling—in the spring

EXTRA PRACTICE: Click Germanzone.org's online links to get more practice with weather.

- https://www.germanzone.org/weather-wie-ist-das-wetter-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-das-wetter-europa/.

Ex. F: **Bist du gut in Mathe?** Now ask your classmates how well they do in the following subject areas.

A: Bist du gut in Mathe? (Are you good in/at math?)
B: Ja, ich bin gut in Mathe. (Yes, I am good in/at math.)
B: Bist du gut in Physik?
A: Nein, ich bin nicht so gut in Physik.

- Mathe
- Physik
- Chemie

- Biologie
- Musik
- Sport
- Literatur
- Spanisch
- Deutsch
- Italienisch
- Englisch
- Psychologie
- Geschichte

Watch this clip from *Avengers Endame* (in German) to hear another example of the verb *sein:*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-6

EXTRA PRACTICE: Need more practice with *sein*? Click the links below for some online practice that will check your answers automatically. There may be some words in the sentences that you don't understand, but don't worry about those for now. All you need to do is to look for the **subject** of the sentence and conjugate the verb for that.

- https://german.net/exercises/verbs/sein/
- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-sein-present-tense-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-sein-present-tense-2/.

Ex. G: Wiederholung!

So far, you have learned how to introduce yourself, say where you live, and describe yourself as well as others. In the space below, write a brief description of yourself and two of your friends. If you can't think of what to write, here are a few suggestions: name, where you come from, where you live, how the weather is in your area, your age, a few adjectives to describe yourself, etc.

1. (yourself)

2. (friend 1)

3. (friend 2)

Now go back and reread what you wrote. Did you remember to put "aus" after "kommen?" (i.e. come **from**?) Did you remember to put "in" after "wohnen"? (i.e. live **in**?)

And finally, *Ich bin Groot*:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=492#oembed-7

7. Section 1-7

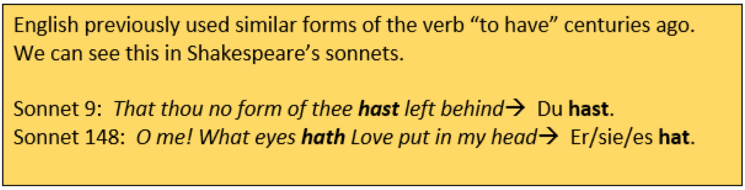
1–7: The Verb *haben*—to have

You have already learned how to conjugate the verb *sein*, to be. The next verb you will learn is *haben*, to have. Both *haben* and *sein*are arguably the two most important verbs in the German language. Not only are they very common in everyday speech, but they will also be used in future chapters to form the past tense.

Here is the verb *haben* conjugated for all forms. It is slightly irregular in the *du* and *er/sie/es*, so you will need to memorize the conjugation.

ich habe	wir haben
du hast	ihr habt
er/sie/es hat	sie/Sie haben

- Ich **habe** im September Geburtstag.
- Du **hast** das Buch.
- Er **hat** morgen Biologie.
- Sie **hat** das Papier.
- Wir **haben** Psychologie am Montag.
- Ihr **habt** eine Katze.
- Sie **haben** im März Geburtstag.



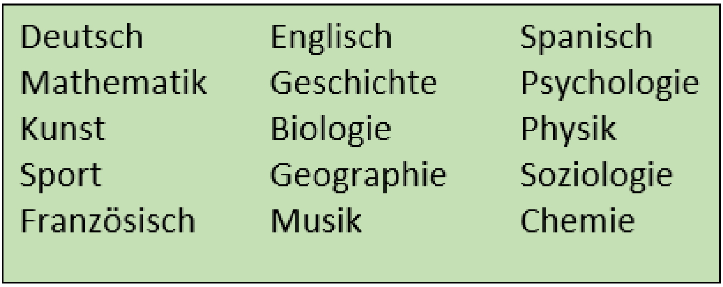
English previously used similar forms of the verb "to have" centuries ago. We can see this in Shakespeare's sonnets.

Sonnet 9: *That thou no form of thee **hast** left behind*→ Du **hast**.
Sonnet 148: *O me! What eyes **hath** Love put in my head*→ Er/sie/es **hat**.

Video. *Conjugate "haben."* Watch the video to see me reteaching this.

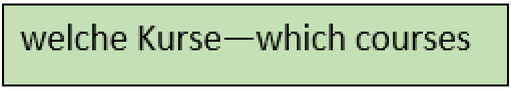
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#oembed-1

In the box below is a list of classes that you may have right now. Most of them are very similar to English.



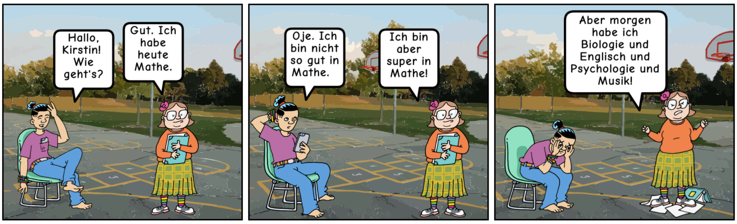
Deutsch
Mathematik
Kunst
Sport
Französisch
Englisch
Geschichte
Biologie
Geographie
Musik
Spanisch
Psychologie
Physik
Soziologie
Chemie

Ex. A: Kurse. Talk with a partner about your schedule for today (*heute*) and tomorrow (*morgen*).



welche Kurse—which courses

A: Welche Kurse hast du heute?
B: Ich habe heute ___________ und ____________.
A: Welche Kurse hast du morgen?
B: Ich habe morgen ___________ und ____________.


Hallo, Kirstin! Wie geht's?
Gut. Ich habe heute Mathe.
Oje. Ich bin nicht so gut in Mathe.
Ich bin aber super in Mathe!
Aber morgen habe ich Biologie und Englisch und Psychologie und Musik!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Days of the Week

You can also use the days of the week with the verb *haben* to describe your schedule.

Notice that the days of the week have certain patterns.

- All but *Mittwoch* end in the word *Tag*, day.
- *Mittwoch* literally means "midweek."
- Where we see the letters "t" or "th" in English, there is often a "d" in German. →**D**ienstag (**T**uesday); **D**onnerstag (**Th**ursday)

Montag—Monday
Dienstag—Tuesday
Mittwoch—Wednesday
Donnerstag—Thursday
Freitag—Friday
Samstag—Saturday
Sonntag—Sunday

Switching "t" and "th" with "d" (and vice versa) in German works with lots of words. You can use this to help you remember new vocabulary in German. Here are a few more examples:

- **d**rei→**th**ree
- **d**enken→**th**ink
- **d**ie→**th**e
- **d**u—**th**ou
- **T**ür—**d**oor
- **T**ag—**d**ay

If you want to learn more about this, look up the 2nd High German Consonant Shift (zweite hochdeutsche Lautverschiebung) online.

Listen to Wikimedia user Christoph (Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported) pronouncing the days of the week.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#audio-494-1

To say that you do something on a certain day, use the preposition *am* before the day.

am Mittwoch→**on** Wednesday
am Samstag→**on** Saturday
am Dienstag→**on** Tuesday

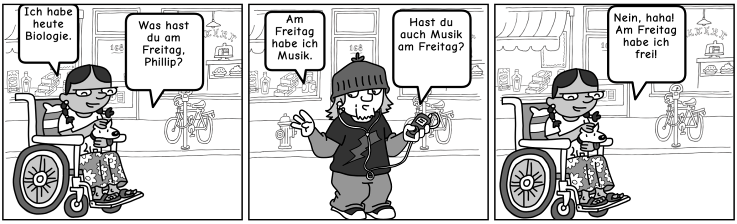
Ex. B: Wann hat Philipp Chemie? Answer the questions about Philipp's schedule in complete sentences, using the verb *haben* and the days of the week.

Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag
Biologie Musik	Deutsch Chemie Deutsch	Biologie	Deutsch Chemie Musik	Biologie Deutsch

Beispiel: Wann hat Philipp Spanisch?
→Philipp hat am Samstag Spanisch.

1. Wann hat Philipp Biologie?
2. Wann hat er Chemie?
3. Wann hat er Deutsch?
4. Wann hat er Spanisch?
5. Wann hat er Musik?

6. Wann hat er frei?
7. Was hat Philipp am Montag?
8. Was hat Philipp am Dienstag?
9. Was hat Philipp am Mittwoch?
10. Was hat Philipp am Donnerstag?
11. Was hat Philipp am Freitag?
12. Was hat Philipp am Samstag?
13. Was hat Philipp am Sonntag?


Ich habe heute Biologie.
Was hast du am Freitag, Phillip?
Am Freitag habe ich Musik.
Hast du auch Musik am Freitag?
Nein, haha! Am Freitag habe ich frei!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. C: Now answer the questions about your own schedule in complete sentences. If you don't have anything on a certain day, you can always say, "Ich habe frei."

1. Was haben Sie am Montag?
2. Was haben Sie am Dienstag?
3. Was haben Sie am Mittwoch?
4. Was haben Sie am Donnerstag?
5. Was haben Sie am Freitag?
6. Was haben Sie am Samstag?
7. Was haben Sie am Sonntag?
8. Wann haben Sie Deutsch?

Ex. D: Ask a partner the questions from the exercise above. Now write a brief paragraph about his/her schedule in third person.

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website for extra practice with the verb "haben." Don't worry about all the words you may not know for now; just look at the subject to conjugate the verb.

- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-haben-present-tense-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-haben-present-tense-2/.

Deutsche Musik! Want to practice the days of the week through music? Click on the video to hear the song *JedenTag* (2015) by Nena. In the chorus, she repeats the days of the week beginning with M*ontag*. (The week begins on Monday in Germany.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#oembed-2

Songtext: https://genius.com/Nena-jeden-tag-lyrics

Ex. E: Video. Easy German: Days of the Week.

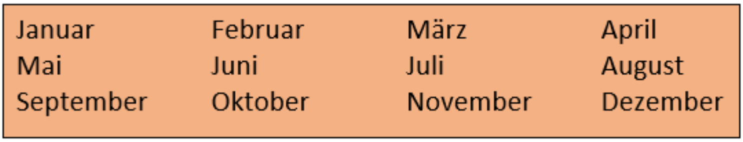
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#oembed-3

The video shows interviews with Germans talking about their weekly schedules. Using what you learn in the video through subtitles, try to figure out what the following new words mean.

1. arbeiten

2. Bergfest
3. Sport
4. Flohmarkt
5. Wasser
6. Kino
7. Frühstück

The **months of the year** are very similar in German.



Januar	Februar	März	April
Mai	Juni	Juli	August
September	Oktober	November	Dezember

Listen to these being pronounced by Wikimedia user Christoph, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0 Unported.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#audio-494-2

Note a few differences in pronunciation:

- The letter "j" in German is pronounced like a "y" in English.
- The letter "ä" in German is pronounced like the first "e" in the word "ever."
- In the word "August," the 2nd syllable is stressed: au-GUST

Watch out!

So far, you have seen two very similar words in

German that both mean "in": *in* and *im*. For now, ONLY use *im* with months and seasons. In a later chapter, you will learn the difference between these two words.

To say that you do something in a certain month, use the word *im* in front of the month.

- **im** Januar—in January
- **im** Oktober—in October
- **im** Juli—in July

Wann hat Ingrid Geburtstag? When does Ingrid have a birthday?

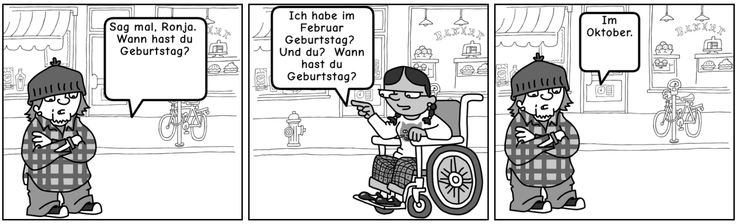
Sie hat im September Geburtstag. She has a birthday in September.

"*Aachener Rosenmontagszug 2013" by Neuwieser is marked with CC BY-SA 2.0.*

Karneval ist im Februar oder im März.

Ex. F: **Geburtstag.** Ask your classmates when they have birthdays.

A: Wann hast du Geburtstag?
B: Ich habe im _____________ Geburtstag.


Sag mal, Ronja. Wann hast du Geburtstag?
Ich habe im Februar Geburtstag? Und du? Wann hast du Geburtstag?
Im Oktober.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#h5p-13

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#h5p-14

Quick review of months and days, courtesy of Sabine Milz.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#h5p-135

Quick review of the verbs *haben* and *sein* with Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) verb activity:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#h5p-74

EXTRA PRACTICE with days, months, and seasons.

- https://www.germanzone.org/time-days-months-seasons-1/.

Video. Easy German: Haben. Watch the video to see lots of examples with the verb "haben" in real life.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=494#oembed-4

EXTRA PRACTICE: Need more practice with *haben*? Click the link below for some online practice that will check your answers automatically. There may be some words in the sentences that you don't understand, but don't worry about those for now. All you need to do is to look for the **subject** of the sentence and conjugate the verb for that.

- https://german.net/exercises/verbs/haben/

CHALLENGING PRACTICE: For those who wish to go beyond what we have learned, these exercises will provide you with a challenge.

You will be conjugating both *sein* and *haben.* Additionally, you will have to choose which of the verbs is more appropriate in each sentence. As always, the site will grade your answers and give you feedback.

- https://www.germanzone.org/verbs-haben-sein-present-tense-2/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/verbs-haben-sein-1-present-tense/.

8. Section 1-8

1–8: Plurals

So far, you have learned that German nouns have a grammatical gender (der, die or das). Now you will learn how to make them plural. In English, we usually add an –*s* or –*es* to the end of the word:

- book→books
- computer→computers
- hobby→hobbies

In German, however, there are several different endings to form plurals. You will need to learn the plural form when you learn new words. The dictionary form of German nouns will show letters that come after the noun. These should be added to the word to form the plural.

75-90% of masculine and neuter nouns add -e

- der Tisch, -e→die Tisch**e**
- das Papier, -e→die Papier**e**
- das Heft, -e→die Heft**e**
- der Filzstift, -e→die Filzstift**e**

Occasionally, these words will add an umlaut in addition to –e.

- der Stuhl, –¨e→die Stühl**e**
- der Rucksack, -¨e→ die Rucksäck**e**

75-90% of feminine nouns add –n or –en.

- die Tafel, -n→die Tafel**n**
- die Uhr, -en→die Uhr**en**
- die Landkarte, –n→die Landkarte**n**

- die Tür→die Tür**en**
- die Tasche→die Tasche**n**

Occasionally, these words will add an umlaut in addition to –n or –en.

- die Maus, -¨e→die Mäuse
- die Wand, -¨e→die Wände

Feminine words ending in –in that denote people also add –en or –n but add an extra –n- between the noun and the plural ending.

- die Professorin, -nen→die Professorin**nen**
- die Studentin, –nen→die Studentin**nen**
- die Lehrerin, –nen→die Lehrerin**nen**

Shortened forms and borrowed words tend to add an –s.

- das Handy→die Handys
- der Kuli→die Kulis
- der Laptop→die Laptops
- der Gummi→die Gummis
- das Hobby→die Hobbys
- das Auto→die Autos

Masculine and neuter words that end in –er often do not add anything to form the plural, especially words denoting people.

- der Lehrer, — →die Lehrer
- der Wischer, — →die Wischer
- der Kugelschreiber, — →die Kugelschreiber
- das Poster, — →die Poster
- der Computer, — →die Computer

A smaller percentage will simply have to be memorized. As always, the dictionary entry will show how to make the plural.

- der Professor, –en→die Professoren
- der Student, –en→die Studenten
- das Buch, –¨er→die Bücher

Note that the definite article of every German plural automatically becomes *die*, whether it is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

- der Tisch BUT **die** Tische

History of the English language:

You may be thinking that it is unnatural to add anything besides an –*s* or –*es* to plurals, as we do in English. However, English has plenty of irregular plurals…and this used to be the rule instead of the exception. Here are a few that we still use today that have Germanic roots.

English adds an "umlaut." An umlaut is as a change in the vowel sound. German adds two dots above the vowel to show this. English does not; English writes the change as a different vowel.

- mouse→mice
- foot→feet
- goose→geese
- louse→lice
- man→men
- woman→women

English adds no ending.

- moose→moose
- deer→deer
- sheep→sheep

English adds –en.

- ox→oxen
- child→children

English changes final –f to –v + es.

- wife→wives
- roof→rooves

Watch YourGermanTeacher's video to learn some tips and tricks on how to remember plural forms:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#oembed-1

Ex. A: Wie viele haben wir? Make a tally of how many of the following things you see in the room. Then form a complete sentence using the verb *haben*, the number, and the plural form of the item. If you have none of the items, write the word "keine" in front of the noun plural, i.e. "no items."

Beispiel: der Bleistift
→Wir haben fünfzehn **Bleistifte**.
der Laptop
→Wir haben **keine Laptops**.

1. der Stuhl
2. der Tisch
3. das Fenster
4. die Uhr
5. das Buch
6. das Heft
7. die Wand
8. die Tafel
9. der Student
10. das Heft

11. der Kuli
12. der Bleistift
13. der Computer

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#h5p-15

EXTRA PRACTICE: Need more practice with noun plurals and classroom objects? Click on Germanzone.org's website to do more. As always, it will grade your answers.

- https://www.germanzone.org/noun-plurals-1-classroom-objects/.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#h5p-16

Compound nouns

Like English, German frequently uses compound nouns.

Wasser + Fall = Wasserfall   Hand + Schuh = Handschuh
(Water) + (Fall) = (Waterfall)   *(hand)+(shoe)= glove*

In English, sometimes these compound nouns are written all as one word, but other times they are written with a space in between.

football   BUT   swimming pool
(no space)   (space between words)

In German, compound nouns are never written with a space.

Fußball Schwimmbad

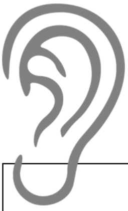
This is why German often gets the reputation of having long words. Many long German words are nothing more than smaller words put together as compound nouns. Several words denoting family members follow this pattern.

- die Großmutter
- der Großvater
- die Urgroßmutter
- der Urgroßvater
- die Halbschwester
- der Halbbruder
- die Stiefmutter
- der Stiefvater
- die Stiefschwester
- der Stiefbruder

Notice that we add the following prefixes to make other words:

groß—big/grand
ur—great
halb—half
stief—step

The definite article (der/die/das) will be the same as the LAST word in the compound noun. For example, "die Halbschwester" is still feminine because the last word in the compound, "Schwester," is feminine. No matter how many words make up a compound word, the gender is ALWAYS determined by the last word.



Ex. D: LISTENING PRACTICE. Listen to Johanna (AudioLingua) describe her family. You will hear several new vocabulary words you just learned, as well as their plural forms.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#audio-496-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#h5p-131

Video. *Easy German. Compound Words.* Click to see more examples of how to make compound words in German.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=496#oembed-2

Ex. D: Video: Nicos Weg. Folge 2: “Kein Problem!” Watch episode 2 and do the online activities.

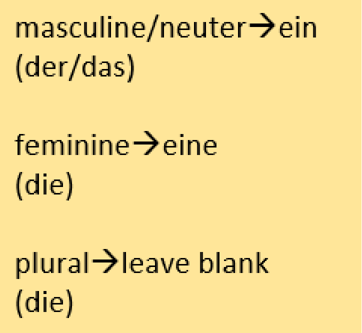
- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/kein-problem/l-37251054

9. Section 1-9

1–9: Indefinite Articles (Ein/eine) and "Kein/Keine"

You have already learned the definite article (der/die/das) of each word in this chapter so far. Now we're going to add indefinite articles.

An indefinite article in English is the word "a" or "an." In German, you will use "ein" or "eine," depending on the gender of the noun. This is why it is important to learn the gender along with the noun.



masculine/neuter→ein
(der/das)

feminine→eine
(die)

plural→leave blank
(die)

Masculine and neuter add no ending.

Feminine adds an –e to match the end of "die."

Plural is left blank because you can't say, for example, "I have a books." Rephrase to say, "I have books"→*Ich habe Bücher*.

Beispiele:

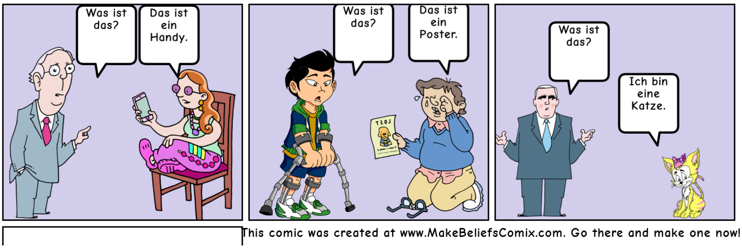
- die Schwester→eine Schwester (Feminine adds –e).
- der Bruder→ein Bruder (Masculine adds nothing).
- die Tafel→eine Tafel (Feminine adds –e).
- der Stuhl→ein Stuhl (Masculine adds nothing).
- das Poster→ein Poster (Neuter adds nothing).
- das Handy→ein Handy (Neuter adds nothing).

Video. Click the link to see me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=498#oembed-1

Video. Watch Learn German's video to see a detailed explanation of indefinite articles.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=498#oembed-2


Was ist das?
Das ist ein Handy.
Was ist das?
Das ist ein Poster.
Was ist das?
Ich bin eine Katze.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. A: Was ist das? Practice with your partner, asking what certain items around the room are. This time, you will answer with an indefinite article (**ein/eine**) instead of a definite article (der/die/das). If you can't remember the gender of the word, go back and look it up. (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

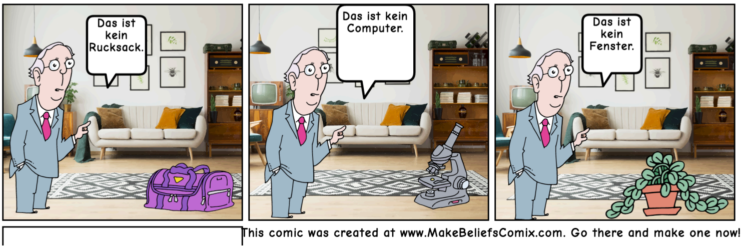
One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=498#audio-498-1

A: Was ist das?
B: Das ist **ein** Fenster.
B: Was ist das?
A: Das ist **eine** Landkarte.

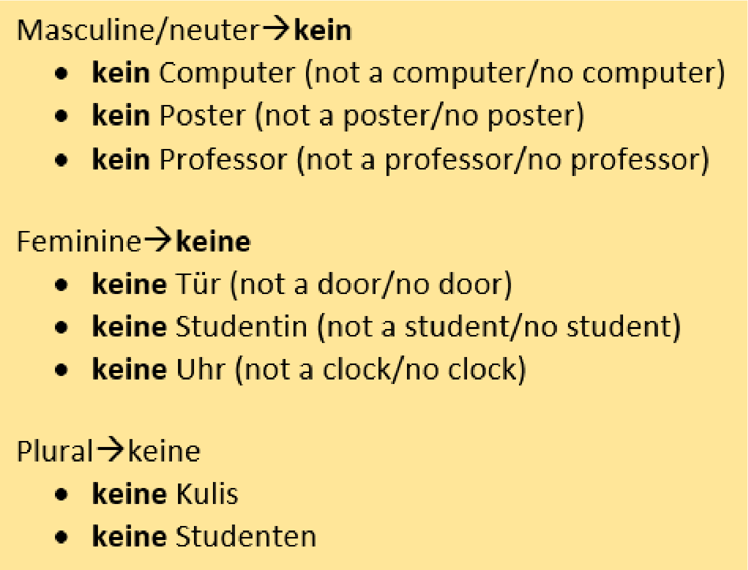
EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website and do the activity using ein-words and classroom items.

- https://www.germanzone.org/indefinite-article-ein-1-classroom-objects/.


Das ist kein Rucksack.
Das ist kein Computer.
Das ist kein Fenster.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

German also has a word to express „not a." To negate "ein/eine," you will use the word "kein" or "keine" in front of the noun, depending on its gender.



Masculine/neuter→**kein**

- **kein** Computer (not a computer/no computer)
- **kein** Poster (not a poster/no poster)
- **kein** Professor (not a professor/no professor)

Feminine→**keine**

- **keine** Tür (not a door/no door)
- **keine** Studentin (not a student/no student)
- **keine** Uhr (not a clock/no clock)

Plural→keine

- **keine** Kulis
- **keine** Studenten

COMMON MISTAKE: You may be tempted to say "nicht ein," (not a), as you would in English. This is incorrect. You should use "kein" or "keine" instead.

INCORRECT: Das ist ~~nicht ein~~ Kuli. INCORRECT!!!

CORRECT: Das ist kein Kuli.

Ex. B: Ist das ein Kuli? Practice with your classmates, using both *ein/eine* and *kein/keine* to describe words around the room.

A: Ist das *ein* Kuli?
B: Nein, das ist *kein* Kuli. Das ist *ein* Bleistift.
B: Ist das *eine* Professorin?
A: Nein, das ist *keine* Professorin. Das ist *eine* Studentin.

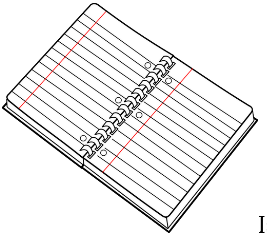
EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website to practice ein vs. kein. Each sentence will have two correct answers—one using "ein" and one using "kein." There may be a few words that you haven't seen yet, but don't be afraid to look them up in the dictionary.

- https://www.germanzone.org/articles-ein-kein-2/.

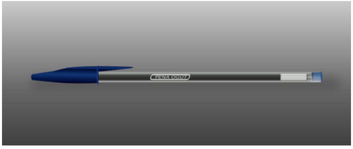
For more extra practice, do Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) activity:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=498#h5p-81

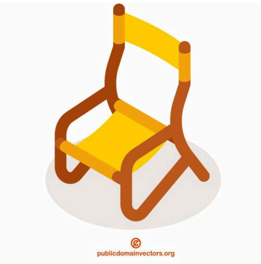
Ex. C: Was ist das? Using the pictures below, answer the following questions. Make sure to use both "ein/e" and "kein/e".

Beispiel:  Ist das ein Buch?

→Nein, das ist kein Buch. Das ist ein Heft.

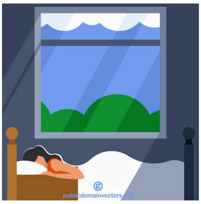
1. 

5.



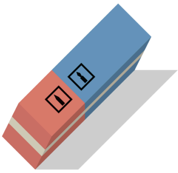
Ist das ein Bleistift?

2.



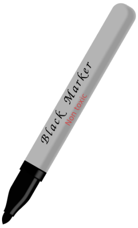
Ist das eine Tür?

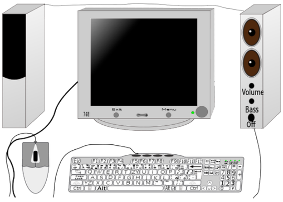
3.



Ist das ein Wischer?

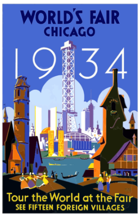
4.


Black Marker
Non toxic


Volume
Bass
Off

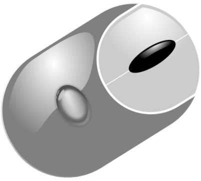
Ist das ein Tisch?

6.


WORLD'S FAIR
CHICAGO
1934
Tour the World at the Fair
SEE FIFTEEN FOREIGN VILLAGES

Ist das eine Landkarte?

7.



Ist das eine Uhr?

8.

Ist das ein Kuli?　　Ist das ein Laptop?

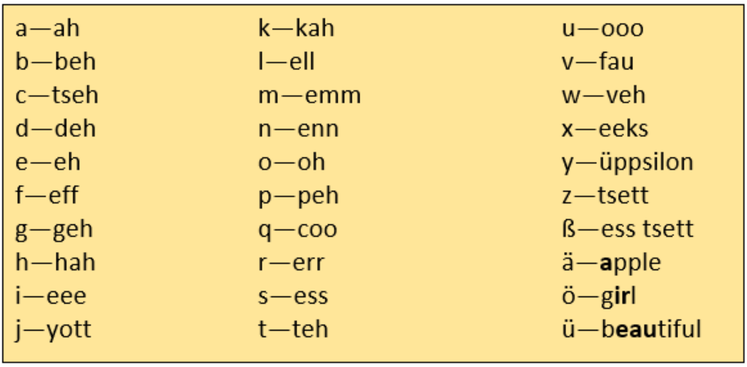
Ex. D: Video: *Nicos Weg. Folge 3: „Tschüss!“* Watch episode 3 and do the online activities.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/tsch%C3%BCss/l-37251033

10. Section 1-10

1-10: The Alphabet (Das Alphabet)

You already know how most of the letters in the German alphabet are pronounced. Here is the official German alphabet. It has the same 26 letters that English has with four additional letters: ä, ö, ü, and ß.



a—ah
b—beh
c—tseh
d—deh
e—eh
f—eff
g—geh
h—hah
i—eee
j—yott

k—kah
l—ell
m—emm
n—enn
o—oh
p—peh
q—coo
r—err
s—ess
t—teh

u—ooo
v—fau
w—veh
x—eeks
y—üppsilon
z—tsett
ß—ess tsett
ä—**a**pple
ö—g**ir**l
ü—b**eau**tiful

Listen to the alphabet here. Audio courtesy of Light Bulb Languages, https://www.lightbulblanguages.co.uk/

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#audio-500-1

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#audio-500-2

Notes on pronunciation:

Here are a few differences from English, which have not already been mentioned in previous sections.

- J is pronounced like English “y”.
- L is pronounced slightly different from English with the tongue touching the back of the teeth.
- ß is pronounced like a double “ss”. It is never found at the beginning of a word.
- Ä is pronounced like the “a” in “apple” or the “e” in “ever.”
- Ö is pronounced like the “ir” in “girl” except with less of an “r” sound.
- Ü is pronounced similar to the “eau” in the word “beautiful” but with rounded lips.

Video. Watch YourGermanTeacher’s video to hear the alphabet.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#oembed-1

Video. Watch Easy German’s video to hear the alphabet with examples for each letter.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#oembed-2

You will learn more rules for pronunciation as we get to them in this textbook, but if you want to learn all about pronunciation, watch YourGermanTeacher's video to get ahead.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#oembed-3

EXTRA PRACTICE:

Go to Deutsche Welle and practice your pronunciation of all German sounds and vowel combinations with interactive exercises.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/abc/c-39621991.

Ex. A: Abkürzungen. Practice saying the following abbreviations out loud in German.

1. USA
2. BMW
3. VW
4. EU
5. FKK
6. DVD
7. NRW
8. GmbH
9. DDR
10. CDU
11. SPD
12. DAAD
13. DFB
14. EKD
15. FDP
16. ICE
17. LKW
18. RTL

QUICK LISTENING PRACTICE: Listen to Mara, Luis, und Nico spell their favorite band's and singer's names. (Audio courtesy of AudioLingua.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#h5p-130

Ex. B: Buchstabieren Sie bitte! With a partner, practice spelling the following German words out loud.

A: Wie schreibt man Tisch? (How does one write "Tisch"?)
B: T-I-S-C-H.

1. Stiefbruder
2. Mutter
3. Vater
4. Halbschwester
5. Großmutter
6. Tante
7. Onkel
8. Tasche
9. Computer
10. Wetter
11. kritisch
12. Geburtstag
13. Psychologie
14. Dezember

EXTRA PRACTICE: Hörverständnis—das Alphabet. Go to Germanzone.org's website and listen to the cities being spelled aloud. Choose the one that corresponds to what you hear.

- https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-das-alphabet-orte/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-das-alphabet/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/horverstandnis-das-alphabet-faecher/.

Ex. C: Video. *Nicos Weg. Folge* 4. *Von* A *bis* Z. Watch the video and do the online activities.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/von-a-bis-z/l-37256418.

So far, you have learned the basics of introducing yourself in this chapter. In the next episode of *Nicos Weg*, you will learn some alternatives to "Ich heiße…"

Ich heiße ______.	*I am called ______.*
Mein Name ist _____.	*My name is ______.*
Ich bin ______.	*I am _______.*
Wie heißen Sie?/Wie heißt du?	*How are you called?*
Wie ist Ihr Name?/Wie ist dein Name?	*What is your name?*
Wer sind Sie?/Wer bist du?	*Who are you?*

Ex. D: Video. *Nicos Weg. Folge 5. Ich heiße Emma.* Watch the video and do the online activities.

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/ich-hei%C3%9Fe-emma/l-37262882.

Listen to Die fantastischen Vier's song, *MfG*, (1999) to practice the alphabet. The song contains many abbreviations found in the German language. The lyrics are in the video.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=500#oembed-4

11. Section 1-11

1–11: Present Tense—Regular Verbs

So far, you have learned how to conjugate the verbs *sein* and *haben*, the two most important verbs in the German language. Both of them are irregular, and their conjugations had to be memorized. Most other verbs in German are not irregular and have a set pattern of endings.

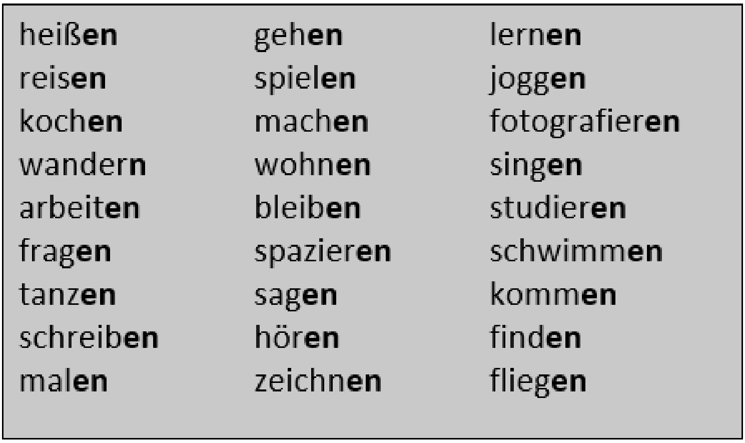
What is verb conjugation in English? Putting certain endings on verbs so that they match up with their subjects!

As a native English speaker, you may not realize that you conjugate verbs every day when speaking. Compare the following sentences:

- I play basketball. (No ending on "play")
- She play**s** basketball. (-s at end of "play")

If you grew up learning English, you probably don't notice that you automatically do this; you naturally can sense what sounds correct when speaking.

Below are some common regular verbs in their infinitive form (aka. **unconjugated** form. All German infinitives end in *–en* (99% of all verbs) or -*n* (<1%).



heiß**en**
reis**en**
koch**en**
wander**n**
arbeit**en**
frag**en**
tanz**en**
schreib**en**
mal**en**
geh**en**
spiel**en**
mach**en**
wohn**en**
bleib**en**
spazier**en**
sag**en**
hör**en**
zeichn**en**
lern**en**
jogg**en**
fotografier**en**
sing**en**
studier**en**
schwimm**en**
komm**en**
find**en**
flieg**en**

You have already memorized a few phrases that had conjugated verbs in them. You may have wondered why the ending of the verb changed in different sentences.

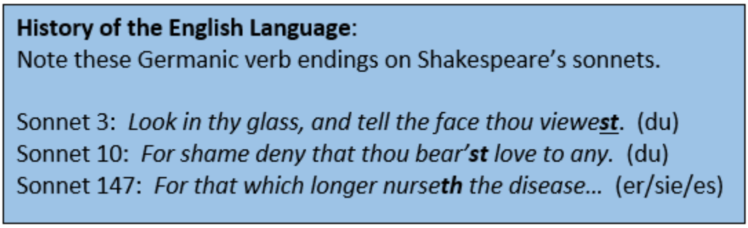
• *Ich komm***e** *aus Berlin.*	I come from Berlin.
• *Er wohn***t** *in England.*	He lives in England.
• *Sie heiß***t** *Sophia.*	She is called Sophia.

The infinitive (unconjugated form) of each verb has two parts. We will use the verb *lernen* as an example.

Stem: lern–
Ending: –en

In German, the following verb endings are used for the present tense of regular verbs.

ich→-e	wir→–en (same as infinitive)
du→ –st	ihr→ -t
er/sie/es→ -t	sie/Sie→ -en (same as infinitive)



History of the English Language:
Note these Germanic verb endings on Shakespeare’s sonnets.

Sonnet 3: *Look in thy glass, and tell the face thou viewe**st**.* (du)
Sonnet 10: *For shame deny that thou bear’**st** love to any.* (du)
Sonnet 147: *For that which longer nurse**th** the disease…* (er/sie/es)

How to conjugate a German verb.

Step 1: Take off the ending (-en or -n).
Step 2: Add a new ending that matches the subject.

Let’s try it with a few verbs from the list.

Conjugate ***reisen*** for “ich.”	Conjugate ***singen*** for “du.
Step 1: Take off the –en→ *reis-*	Step 1: Take off the –en –
Step 2: Add the new ending→ *–e*	Step 2: Add the new endi
Conjugated verb: *Ich reise.*	Conjugated verb: *Du sing*

Click the link to watch me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-1

Ex. A: Verben. Use the steps for conjugating verbs to complete the tables below.

Conjugate *spielen* for “*wir.*”	Conjugate *machen* for “*du*
Step 1:	Step 1:
Step 2:	Step 2:
Conjugated verb:	Conjugated verb:

Conjugate *bleiben* for “*er.*”	Conjugate *schwimmen* for “*Sie.*”
Step 1:	Step 1:
Step 2:	Step 2:
Conjugated verb:	Conjugated verb:

Conjugate *fragen* for “*ihr.*”	Conjugate *joggen* for “*sie*” (*sing.*)
Step 1:	Step 1:
Step 2:	Step 2:
Conjugated verb:	Conjugated verb:

Conjugate *gehen* for “*ich.*”	Conjugate *schreiben* for “*er.*”
Step 1:	Step 1:
Step 2:	Step 2:
Conjugated verb:	Conjugated verb:

Video. *Easy German: Conjugation of Regular Verbs "sagen," "machen," "hören."* Watch to see some examples of these verbs conjugated.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-2

QUICK LISTENING: Listen to Johanna (AudioLingua) introduce herself and mention a few of her hobbies. How many new verbs do you recognize?

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-1

Ex. B: Now try conjugating some verbs for all forms. Fill in the tables below.

1. kochen—to cook

ich	wir
du	ihr
er/sie/es	sie/Sie

2. fotografieren—to take pictures

ich	wir
du	ihr
er/sie/es	sie/Sie

3. wandern—to hike (think „wander" around)

ich	wir
du	ihr
er/sie/es	sie/Sie

4. hören—to hear, listen to

ich	wir
du	ihr
er/sie/es	sie/Sie

The present tense in German is equivalent to three different ways of expressing the present tense in English. The sentence "Ich lerne Deutsch" could be translated as follows.

1. I **learn** German.
2. I **am learning** German.
3. I **do learn** German.

COMMON MISTAKE: As English speakers, we tend to translate word-for-word into German. This can lead to mistakes in German, because German does not have the present progressive tense (i.e. is learning, am dancing, are playing). Often, that results in the following mistake:

ENGLISH→I am playing.
WRONG→ Ich ~~bin spielen~~.←**WRONG**
CORRECT→Ich spiele.

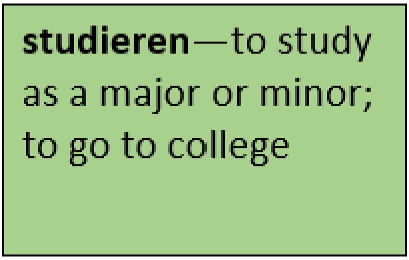
Whenever you want to translate something into German that has is/am/are + verb+ing in English, reword it so that it sounds simpler.

- **He is hiking**.
- REPHRASE TO **He hikes**.
- Translates to **Er wandert**.

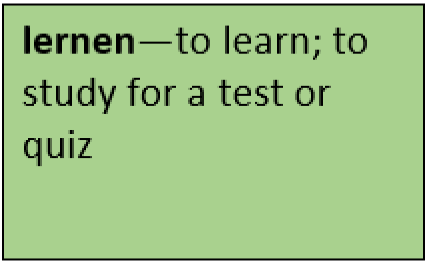
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-17

Studieren vs. lernen:

The verbs *studieren* and *lernen* are often confused because they sound so much like verbs in English.



studieren—to study as a major or minor; to go to college



lernen—to learn; to study for a test or quiz

Beispiele:

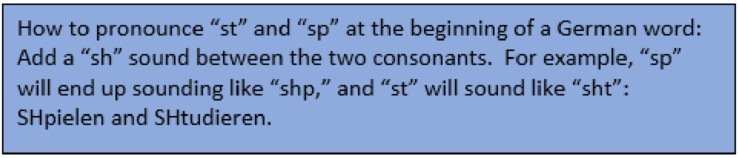
- Was studieren Sie? What are you **majoring** in?
- (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International .)

> *One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-2*

- Ich **lerne** Japanisch. I **am learning** Japanese.
- Wo **studierst** du? Where **do** you **go to college**?
- Er **lernt** für ein Deutschquiz. He **is studying** for a

German quiz.

- Sabine **studiert** Musik. Sabine **is majoring** in music.



How to pronounce "st" and "sp" at the beginning of a German word: Add a "sh" sound between the two consonants. For example, "sp" will end up sounding like "shp," and "st" will sound like "sht": SHpielen and SHtudieren.

QUICK LISTENING: Listen to Aaron, Sebastian, Marieke, and Jule (AudioLingua) talk about what they're majoring in. Which subjects do you hear?

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-3

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-4

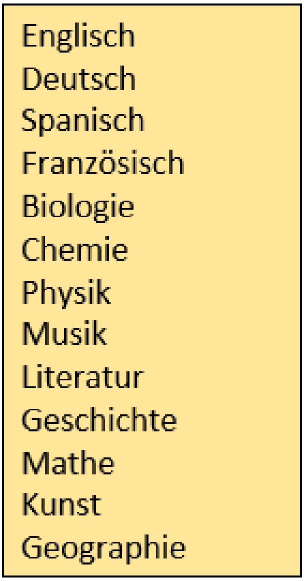
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-5

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#audio-502-6

Check out Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) flashcards to learn more about a few majors in German:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-82

Ex. D: Using the subjects listed below, talk with a partner about whether you are majoring in these subjects or just learning them this semester (or in your free time.)



Englisch
Deutsch
Spanisch
Französisch
Biologie
Chemie
Physik
Musik
Literatur
Geschichte
Mathe
Kunst
Geographie

A: Was studierst du?
B: Ich studiere __________ (und ________.)
B: Was lernst du?
A: Ich lerne __________.
A/B: Ich studiere __________. Ich lerne ________, ________ und ___________.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-18

Nach vs. zu The verbs *reisen*, *gehen*, *fliegen*, *kommen*, and *joggen* are verbs of motion. You can use them to say where you plan to go.

- To say that you are going to a city, state, country, or home, use the preposition *nach.*

→Wir reisen nach Dänemark. (country)
→Er fliegt nach Hause. (home)

- To say that you are going to see a person or a business with a proper name, use the preposition *zu.*

→Wir gehen zu Lena. (person)
→Der Student joggt zu Aldi. (store's proper name)

- To say that you are at home (i.e., **notgoing** home) use the expression “zu Hause.”

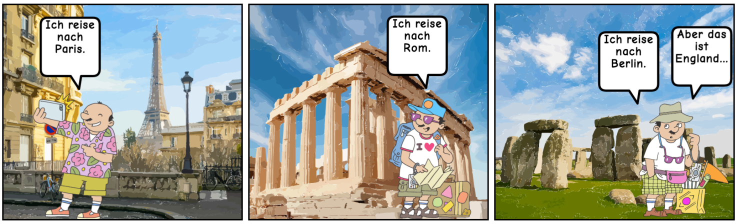
→Morgen bleiben wir zu Hause. (at home)
→Ich arbeite zu Hause. (at home)

COMMON MISTAKE!!!

Students often confuse the word *das Haus* with the phrases „zu Hause“ and „nach Hause.“ Whenever you are talking about a house, use “das Haus.” If you are talking about going home or being at home, use “nach Hause” or “zu Hause.” The –e at the end of these phrases comes from German several centuries ago. It is only used in these two phrases.

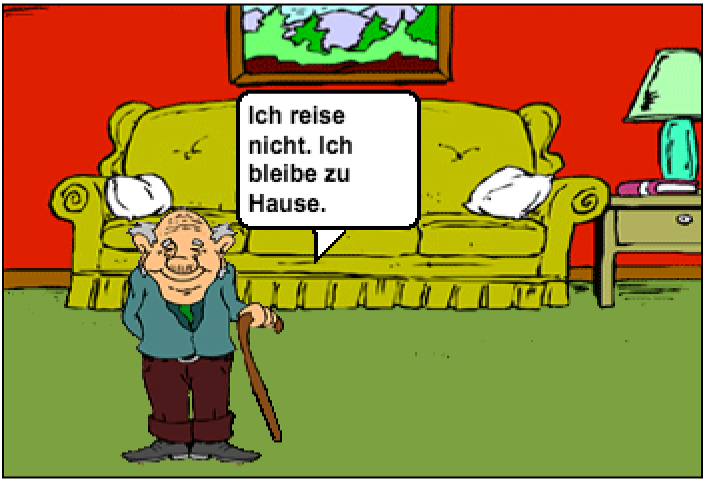
Click to see me reteaching *nach* vs. *zu*:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-3


Ich reise nach Paris.
Ich reise nach Rom.
Ich reise nach Berlin.
Aber das ist England...

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-19


Ich reise nicht. Ich bleibe zu Hause.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-20

QUICK LISTENING: Listen to the description of a kindergarten teacher's day at work. You won't understand all the words, but you will hear several new verbs from this section. Fill in with the missing verbs as you listen. (Used with permission from Germanlistening.com).

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-134

Verbs with stems ending in -d or -t.

If a verb's stem ends in -d or -t, often an extra "e" gets added to its conjugation in the du and er/sie/es form to make it easier to pronounce.

- **arbeit**en   Du arbeitest.   Er arbeitet.

If this extra -e- were not added between the stem and the ending, it would be very hard to pronounce.

INCORRECT→ Du arbei~~tst~~. Er arbei~~tt~~. ←INCORRECT!!

- **find**en   Er findet Deutsch cool.
- **schneid**en   Ihr schneidet das Papier.

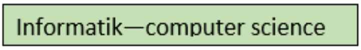
"Nora & Jonas – Zeichnen" by jonasginter is marked with CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

Er zeichn**et** und sie zeichn**et**; sie zeichn**en**.

Click the link to see me reteaching verbs with stems ending in -d or -t:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-4

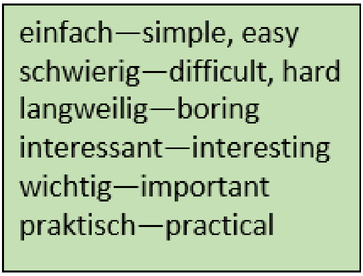
Ex. H: Wie findest du Geschichte? Ask your classmates their opinions on the following subjects.



Informatik—computer science

A: Wie findest du Informatik?

B: Ich finde Informatik schwierig.



einfach—simple, easy
schwierig—difficult, hard
langweilig—boring
interessant—interesting
wichtig—important
praktisch—practical

1. Biologie
2. Psychologie
3. Geschichte
4. Deutsch
5. Englisch
6. Informatik
7. Mathematik
8. Musik
9. Geographie

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-21

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-22

Verbs with stems that end in an "s" sound.

Verbs whose stems end in -ß or -z, often don't add the "s" from –st when conjugated for "du."

Beispiel: du/heißen→Du heißt.

(NOT „*Du heißst*" because „ß" is the same as "ss." That would give us "Du heisssst"—too many of the letter "s"!)

Beispiel: du/tanzen→Du tanzt.

(NOT „Du tanzst" because „z" already makes an „s" sound.)

Click to watch me reteaching verbs with stems ending in -s sound:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-5

Take a moment to do Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) activity to see how well you know the meanings of the verbs you've learned in this section:

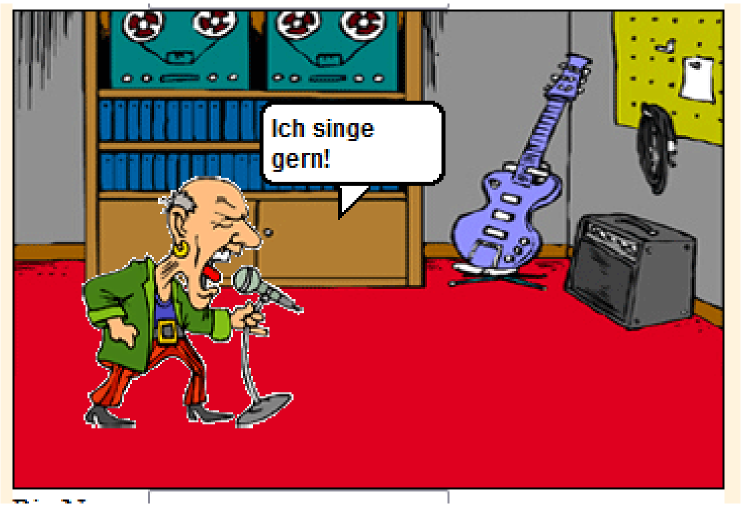
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

—   *version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-90*

Gern + infinitive

To say that you like to do something, add *gern* to the conjugated verb.

Ich zeichne. BUT Ich zeichne **gern**.
(I sketch.) (I **like to** sketch.)
Erika spielt Tuba. BUT Erika spielt **gern** Tuba.
(Erika plays tuba.) (Erika **likes to** play tuba.)
Mein Bruder tanzt. BUT Mein Bruder tanzt **gern**.
(My brother dances.) (My brother **likes to** dance.)


Ich singe gern!

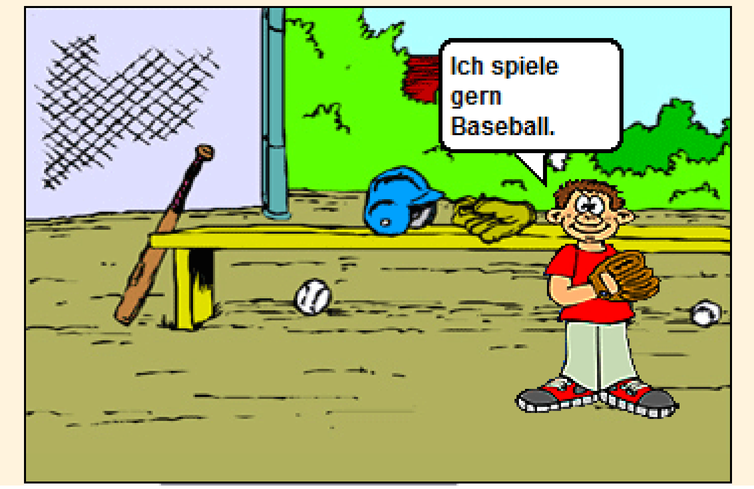
Officially, the word *gern* is an adverb that means “gladly,” but we translate it in common English to mean “like to.”

Just as we negate adjectives by putting *nicht* in front of them, we do the same for adverbs. To negate *gern*, we put the word *nicht* in front of it.

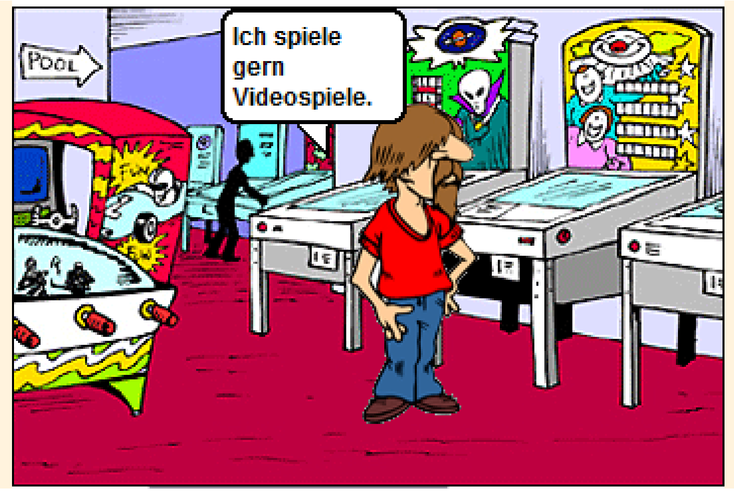
Ich tanze *nicht gern.* (I **don’t like to** dance.)

Click the link to watch me reteaching gern:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-6



Ich spiele gern Baseball.



POOL
Ich spiele gern Videospiele.

Ex. K: Was machst du gern? What do you like to do?

A: Was machst du gern?
B: Ich ___(conjugated VERB)_________ gern.
A: Was machst du nicht gern?
B: Ich ___(conjugated VERB)_________ nicht gern.

Check out Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) activities with more examples of freetime activities:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-89

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-92

Ex. L: Partnerarbeit. Now ask your classmates what they do and don't like to do, using the verbs below.

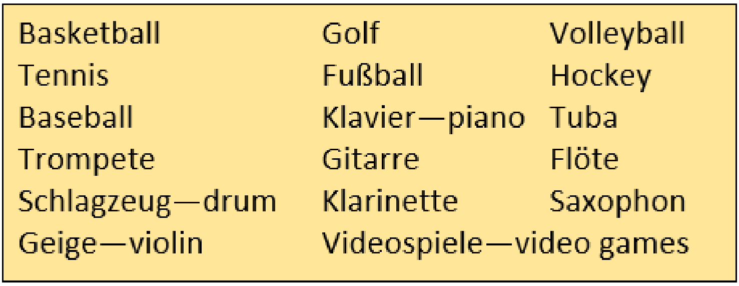
Beispiel: reisen
A: Reist du gern?
B: Ja, ich reise gern. ODER Nein, ich reise nicht gern.

1. kochen
2. wandern
3. tanzen
4. arbeiten
5. schreiben
6. malen
7. spazieren
8. zeichnen
9. lernen
10. joggen
11. fotografieren
12. singen
13. studieren
14. schwimmen

Ex. M: Kleiner Absatz! Using your answers from Ex. L, write a brief paragraph about the people you interviewed and what they like to do (or not do.) Write 7-8 sentences.

Beispiel: Angela kocht nicht gern. Sie wandert sehr gern…usw.

Here are some sports, instruments, and games you might enjoy playing. Most of them are very similar to English.



Basketball	Golf	Volleyball
Tennis	Fußball	Hockey
Baseball	Klavier—piano	Tuba
Trompete	Gitarre	Flöte
Schlagzeug—drum	Klarinette	Saxophon
Geige—violin	Videospiele—video games	

The verb *spielen* can be used with sports, instruments, and games. Check out this diagram with more instruments (courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky (University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-111

Ex. N. Was spielen Sie gern? Was spielen Sie nicht gern?

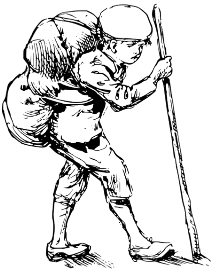
Ich spiele gern ___________. Ich spiele nicht gern __________.

`An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:`
`https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-23`

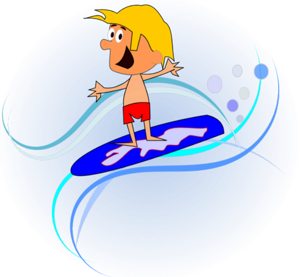
EXTRA PRACTICE: Listening comprehension. (Audio clips used with permission of Germanlistening.com.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-116

Ex. P: Was machen diese Menschen? Write a complete sentence to describe what these people are doing. Some pictures may have more than one possible answer.

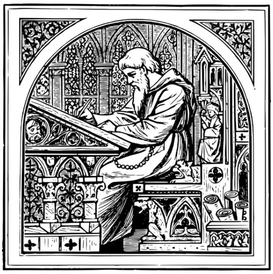
Beispiel: 

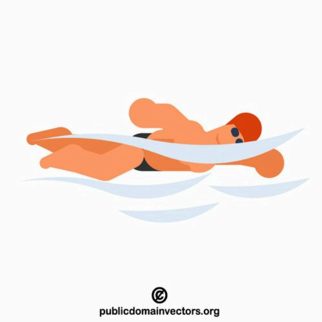
→Er wandert.



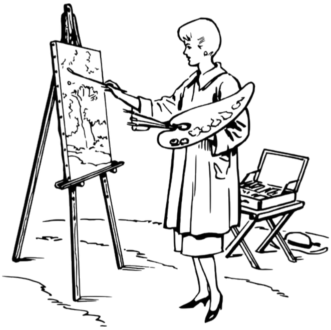
1.

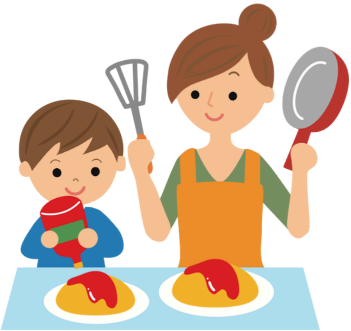
4.

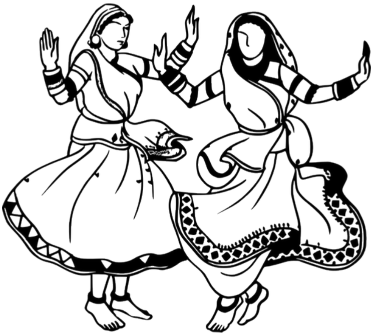


2. 
publicdomainvectors.org

5.



5.  6.



EXTRA PRACTICE: Try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) extra verb conjugation exercises for extra practice:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-75

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-93

EXTRA PRACTICE: Germanzone.org's website has plenty of conjugation practice.

- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-common-verbs-2-2/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-common-verbs-3/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-regular-verbs-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-common-verbs-1-2/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-regular-verbs-2/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/present-tense-common-verbs-4/.

The following exercises have the verbs already conjugated; you will need to supply the correct subject pronoun to match up with the conjugation.

- https://www.germanzone.org/german-subject-pronouns-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/german-subject-pronouns-2/.

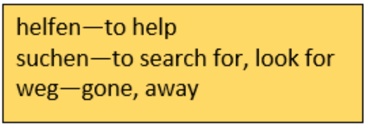
Click on the link and scroll to the bottom of the page to see some extra practice conjugating regular verbs in the present tense. You can set your level for easy, medium, or hard.

- https://www.deutsch-lernen.com/learn-german-online/beginners/uebung1_1.php.

Finally, read the following paragraphs by Dr. Claudia Kost and Crystal Sawatzky (University of Alberta) and click on all the freetime activities you find.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#h5p-91

Ex. Q: Video. *Nicos Weg. Folge 6. Das ist Nico.* Watch the video and do the online activities associated with it. You will hear several new words in this video.


helfen—to help
suchen—to search for, look for
weg—gone, away

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/das-ist-nico/l-37262923.

Video. Easy German: Introduce Yourself in German

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=502#oembed-7

12. Section 1-12

1-12: Nominative Case and Word Order

German has four cases: nominative, accusative, dative, and genitive. A “case” in German basically tells what the word does in a sentence. In this chapter, you are learning the nominative case. The **nominative case** deals with the **subject** of the sentence—the person or thing doing the action of the sentence.

Nominative case = subject

The subject is the word that does the action of the sentence. It is also the word that determines how you conjugate the verb, i.e. which endings you will put on the end of the verb from the verb chart. The subject of each sentence is highlighted below.

- **Ich** habe im März Geburtstag.
- **Frau Schmidt** ist nicht sehr optimistisch.
- **Der Student** kommt aus Saudi-Arabien.
- **Meine Mutter** spielt gern Klavier.
- **Das Wetter** ist kalt und regnerisch.
- **Marions Großmutter** geht morgen ins Restaurant.

In all of these examples, the subject came first in each sentence, and the verb came second. This word order is often seen in German sentences. This is also how we often form sentences in English.

Subject/verb/everything else.

HOWEVER, in German, the subject does not have to come first as long as the verb stays in second position.

RULE: The **verb** in German statements must come in 2nd position.

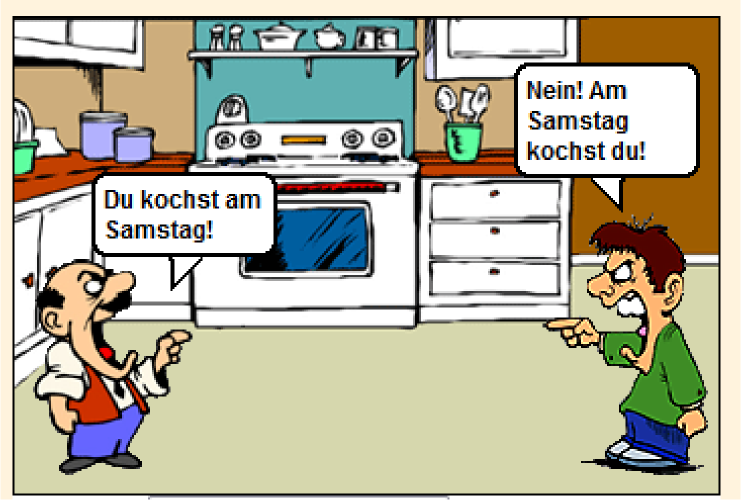
The following examples have the verb in 2nd position, but some of them have a time expression at the beginning instead of the subject. The verb is bold-faced, and the subject is in italics. To the right is an alternate word order that might make more sense for English speakers.

- Morgen **reisen** *wir* nach Europa. (Wir reisen morgen nach Europa).
- *Im Herbst **ist** *das Wetter* kühl. (Das Wetter ist kühl im Herbst).
- *Meine Schwester* **malt** sehr gern.
- Heute **habe** *ich* Mathe. (Ich habe heute Mathe.)

*The sentence "Im Herbst ist das Wetter kühl," may be confusing because it looks like the verb is 3rd. Prepositional phrases count as one element.

- im Herbst
- nach Europa
- zu Karoline

Although the above phrases have more than one word, it would make no sense to split them up. Therefore, prepositional phrases should be kept together.


Du kochst am Samstag!
Nein! Am Samstag kochst du!

Click the link to see me reteaching this concept.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-24

EXTRA PRACTICE: Click on Germanzone.org's site to do another activity in which you will be moving the underlined word or phrase to the beginning of the sentence. Don't forget to put the verb 2nd!

- https://www.germanzone.org/word-order-3-statements/.

Now try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) exercises to review the nominative case and word order:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-84

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-86

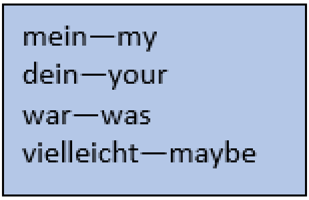
Video. Watch Easy German's video, N*ominativ*, to see more examples of nouns in the nominative case; this time it's in su-u-u-uper slow German. Notice that the verb is in 2nd position.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-2

Ex. B: Video. *Nicos Weg. Folge 7: Woher kommst du?*

Watch the video and do the online activities.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/woher-kommst-du/l-37263828.



mein—my
dein—your
war—was
vielleicht—maybe

Ex. C: Video. *Nicos Weg. Folge 8: Nico hat ein Problem.*

Watch the video and do the online activities. You will be conjugating the verbs *sein* and *haben* as well as several other verbs. Feel free to look back at your notes if you need a refresher on these verbs.

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/nico-hat-ein-problem/l-37265543.

Word order with yes/no questions:

To make questions that can be answered with *ja* or *nein*, word order is exactly like English: VERB/SUBJECT/EVERYTHING ELSE

Statement: Der Student **ist** freundlich. (The student **is** friendly.)

Question: **Ist** der Student freundlich? (**Is** the student friendly?)

Statement: Mein Bruder **arbeitet** viel. (My brother **works** a lot.)

Question: **Arbeitet** mein Bruder viel? (**Does** my brother **work** a lot?)

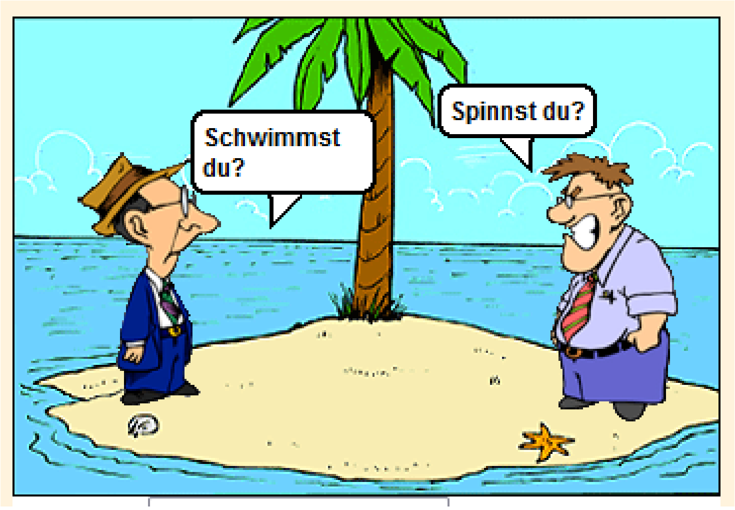
(Works my brother a lot?)

In English, we add an extra “do” or “does” to make yes/no questions. German does not. If necessary, reword the sentence to sound simpler before making a question.

Do you **jog**? (Split verb/subject)

TAKE OUT “DO”: **Jog** you?(Verb/subject)
German: **Joggst** du? (Verb subject)

When in doubt, just put the verb first, and you have an instant question.


Schwimmst du?
Spinnst du?

Click on the video to see me reteaching how to make yes/no questions.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-3

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-25

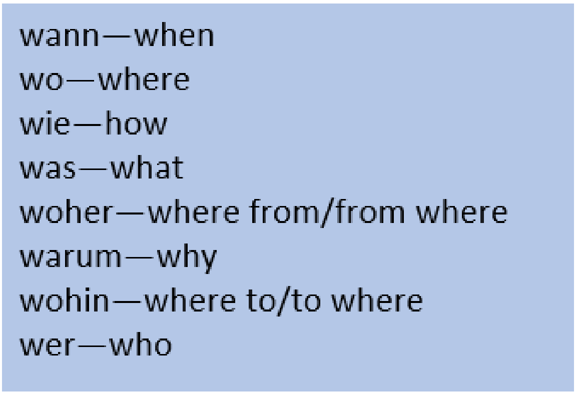
Ex. E: Interview. Ask your classmates 8 yes/no questions about themselves. Don't forget to put the verb first.

Beispiele:

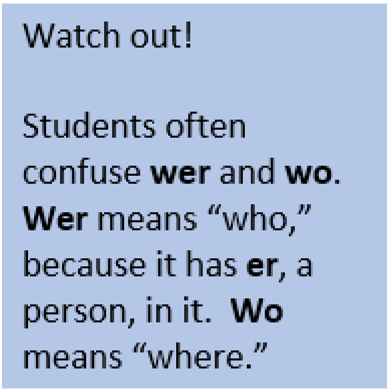
Hörst du gern Musik?
Lernst du Spanisch?
Wohnst du in…?

Question Words

You have already seen several question words so far. Here they are all together.



wann—when
wo—where
wie—how
was—what
woher—where from/from where
warum—why
wohin—where to/to where
wer—who



Watch out!

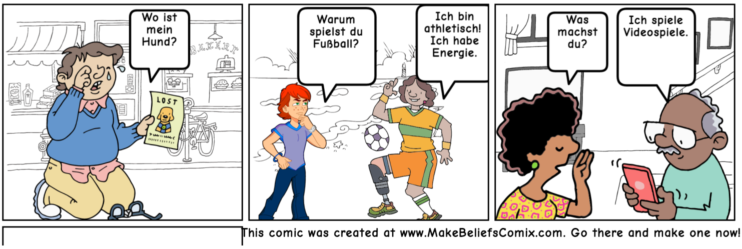
Students often confuse **wer** and **wo**. **Wer** means “who,” because it has **er**, a person, in it. **Wo** means “where.”

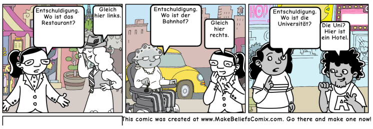
Wann arbeitest du?	**When** do you work?
Wo wohnst du?	**Where** do you live?
Wie heißt der Professor?	**How** is the professor called?
Was ist das?	**What** is that?
Woher kommen Sie?	**Where** do you come from?
Warum lernst du Deutsch?	**Why** are you learning German?
Wohin gehst du?	**Where** are you going (to)?
Wer singt?	**Who** is singing?/**Who** sings?

Notice that the word order is exactly like English; the question word comes first, THEN the verb.

Watch this scene from *Die Unglaublichen* to hear a question with the question word *wo*:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-4


Wo ist mein Hund?
LOST
Warum spielst du Fußball?
Ich bin athletisch! Ich habe Energie.
Was machst du?
Ich spiele Videospiele.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!


Entschuldigung. Wo ist das Restaurant?
Gleich hier links.
Entschuldigung. Wo ist der Bahnhof?
Gleich hier rechts.
Entschuldigung. Wo ist die Universität?
Die Uni? Hier ist ein Hotel.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Click the link to watch me reteaching how to use question words.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-5

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-26

Check out Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) summary of word order with questions:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-93

Listen to Glasperlenspiel's song, *Dein Geheimnis*, (2011), to hear lots of examples of questions and question words.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-6

Songtext: https://genius.com/Glasperlenspiel-dein-geheimnis-lyrics

Practice making more questions with Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) exercise:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-94

EXTRA PRACTICE: Question or statement? Go to Germanzone.org's website and determine whether each set of words makes up a question or a statement.

- https://www.germanzone.org/word-order-1-questions-statements/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/word-order-2-statements-questions/.

Then try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) quiz to review making questions with question words in German.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#h5p-88

Ex. G: Fragen. Listen to Paula, AudioLingua, introduce herself and tell about her hobbies. Then write five questions that ask what she mentions about herself.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#audio-504-1

Time and Place

In German sentences, time expressions come before place expressions. This is the **exact opposite of English**, which usually puts place before time.

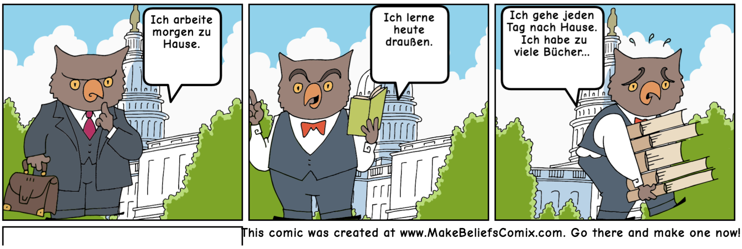
publicdomainvectors.org

TP (Time/Place)

In each sentence below, the time phrase is in bold-face print while the place is in italics.

(Subject/Verb/Time/Place.)

Wir fliegen **am Mittwoch** *nach Deutschland.*
Mein Großvater bleibt **morgen** *zu Hause.*
Die Studentin reist **in zwei Tagen** *nach Alaska.*
Der Mann arbeitet **im Winter** *im Restaurant.*


Ich arbeite morgen zu Hause.
Ich lerne heute draußen.
Ich gehe jeden Tag nach Hause. Ich habe zu viele Bücher...
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

You already know several time expressions using months and days of the week. Here are some place expressions to use for now, along with a few more time expression.

im Restaurant—in the restaurant
im Kino—in the movies
im Supermarkt—in the supermarket
an der Uni—at the university
draußen—outside
im Büro—in the office
im Garten—in the garden
in der Disco—in the disco

oft—often
nie—never
nächstes Jahr—next year
bald—soon
jeden Tag—every day

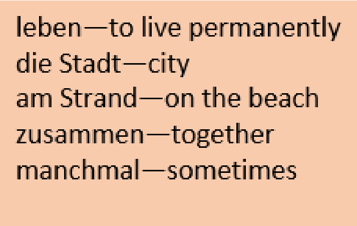
Ex. H: TP! Translate the following sentences into German, using correct word order→subject/verb/time/place.

Beispiel: The student sings at the university tomorrow.
→Der Student (die Studentin) singt morgen an der Uni.
(subject) (verb) (time) (place)

1. We swim every day in the summer.
2. Do you cook at home often?
3. He is at the movie theater a lot.
4. They are living in Sweden next year.
5. They never play outside.
6. Y'all (you guys) stay in the garden a lot.
7. She likes to dance in the disco.
8. He likes to swim at home in July.

Ex. I: Lesen wir! Read the following paragraph and answer the questions about it.

Helen lebt in Aachen. Aachen ist eine Stadt in Deutschland. Helen ist neunundreißig Jahre alt. Sie hat einen Mann, Martin, und zwei Kinder—Benno und Toni. Helen und Martin reisen sehr gern nach Frankreich. Helen spaziert gern am Strand, und Martin surft sehr gern. Benno und Toni spielen zusammen am Strand.


leben—to live permanently
die Stadt—city
am Strand—on the beach
zusammen—together
manchmal—sometimes

Helen hat andere Hobbys. Sie wandert mit Benno und Toni. Sie malt sehr gut. Sie lernt Englisch im Winter, und sie schwimmt im Sommer. Sie bleibt gern zu Hause mit ihrer Familie, aber manchmal fliegt sie nach Italien. Sie findet Italien super.

1. Wo lebt Helen?
2. Wie alt ist Helen?
3. Wie viele Kinder hat Helen?
4. Wohin reist Helen gern?
5. Was macht Martin gern?
6. Was macht Helen gern?

7. Was macht sie im Winter?
8. Wie findet Helen Italien?

Need a review of word order? Watch YourGermanTeacher's video to see more.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=504#oembed-7

13. Section 1-13

1-13: Possessive Adjectives

You already know how to use ein/eine and kein/keine. Possessive adjectives work the same way. In order to use them, you will need to know the grammatical gender of the word and add the correct ending (if necessary).

Review:

- der Computer→masculine→**ein** Computer (no ending added)
- das Poster→neuter→**ein** Poster (no ending added)
- die Wand→feminine→**eine** Wand (-e added)

We do the same with possessive adjectives.

Singular	**Plural**
mein/meine—my	unser/unsere—our
dein/deine—your (informal)	euer/eure—y'alls (you guys')
sein/seine—his sein/seine—its ihr/ihre—her	ihr/ihre—their Ihr/Ihre—your (polite)

For example, if you want to say „our uncle," you will do as follows.

1. der Onkel
2. masculine; add no ending to "unser."
3. unser Onkel

If you want to say "my sister"...

1. die Schwester

2. feminine; add –e.
3. meine Schwester

If you want to say “your child”…

1. das Kind
2. neuter; add no ending
3. dein Kind

Andere Beispiele:

- *Feminine*: **Meine Mutter** kommt aus Alabama.
- *Masculine*: **Mein Vater** kommt aus Tennessee.
- *Feminine*: **Deine Tasche** ist neu.
- *Masculine*: **Dein Rucksack** ist alt.
- *Masculine*: **Ihr Stuhl** ist zu klein.
- *Feminine*: **Ihre Tante** ist sehr liberal.
- *Masculine*: **Sein Laptop** ist aus China.
- *Feminine*: **Seine Tür** ist bunt.
- *Feminine*: **Unsere Professorin** ist exzentrisch.
- *Neuter*: **Unser Fenster** ist grau.
- *Feminine*: **Eure Schwester** bleibt gern zu Hause.
- *Masculine*: **Euer Bruder** spielt gern Videospiele.
- *Masculine*: Frau Koch, was sagt **Ihr Mann**?
- *Feminine*: Frau Koch, singt **Ihre Tochter** heute?
- *Masculine*: **Ihr Onkel** schwimmt sehr schnell.
- *Feminine*: **Ihre Großmutter** ist krank.

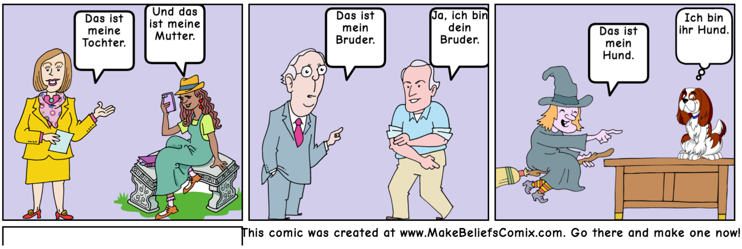
Watch Anja’s video to watch her reteaching possessive adjectives with lots of examples using family member vocabulary.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#oembed-1

Click here to watch me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#oembed-2


Das ist meine Tochter.
Und das ist meine Mutter.
Das ist mein Bruder.
Ja, ich bin dein Bruder.
Das ist mein Hund.
Ich bin ihr Hund.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Watch Easy German's video to see more examples. I suggest watching only the first 6 minutes because the video goes into some endings that we won't learn until Chapter 2.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#oembed-3

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#h5p-27

Ex. B: Stimmt das? Ask your classmates about their family members. Answers should be in complete sentences.

Beispiel: Ist **dein** Vater kritisch?
→Ja, **mein** Vater ist kritisch.
OR
→Nein, **mein** Vater ist nicht kritisch.

1. Ist deine Schwester freundlich?
2. Ist deine Mutter optimistisch?
3. Ist dein Bruder clever?
4. Ist deine Großmutter modern?
5. Ist dein Großvater sentimental?
6. Ist dein Hund/deine Katze klein?
7. Ist deine Tante jung?
8. Ist dein Onkel gesund?
9. Ist deine Schwester fleißig?

Ex. C: Multiple choice. Choose the correct form of the possessive adjective that will match the word in parenthesis.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#h5p-119

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website and practice possessive adjectives with the following activities.

- https://www.germanzone.org/possessive-adjectives-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/possessive-adjectives-2-die-familie/.

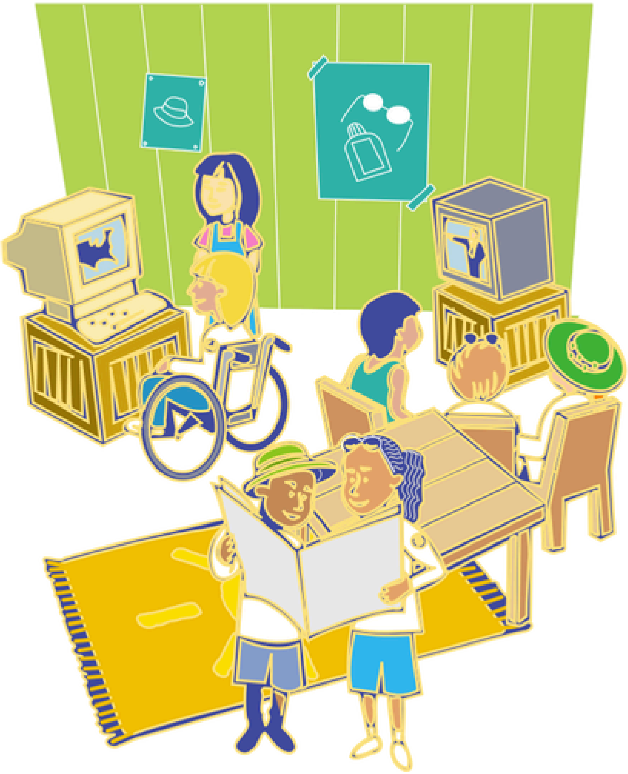
Ex. E: Unser Klassenzimmer. Using possessive adjectives, describe the things in your classroom. Use „unser/unsere" since the items belong to all of you. Don't forget to look at the gender to find the correct ending.

Beispiel: Unsere Landkarte ist sehr modern.

Ex. F: Die Zeitung. You are a reporter for a newspaper interviewing a celebrity about his or her family. Ask 8-10 questions with possessive adjectives. Don't forget to treat the person with respect; use *Ihr*, not *dein*! (And capitalize "Ihr"!)

Beispiel: Wohnt Ihr Bruder in Budapest? Singt Ihre Schwester?

Ex. G: Euer Haus! After visiting these people, you tell them exactly what you think of their room. Since you know them well, use *euer/eure* and describe the items in their house.



Beispiel: Euer Teppich (rug) ist zu gelb. (Your rug is too yellow).

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#h5p-28

EXTRA PRACTICE: Try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) possessive adjective activities. The second one requires using pronouns as well as possessive adjectives.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#h5p-85

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=506#h5p-100

Ex. I: Lesen. Read the article and answer the questions about it in complete sentences.

spricht—speaks

Laura kommt aus Italien, aber sie wohnt heute in Deutschland mit ihrem Mann. Lauras Mann ist Amerikaner und spricht nur Englisch und ein bisschen Deutsch. Er arbeitet bei BMW in Stuttgart. Laura spricht Deutsch, Englisch und Italienisch. Sie ist Lehrerin. Laura und ihr Mann arbeiten den ganzen Tag.

Manchmal gibt es Probleme in Lauras Familie. Laura kocht nicht gern. Ihr Mann kocht auch nicht gern. Manchmal essen sie zu Hause. Manchmal gehen sie ins Restaurant und das ist das Problem. Laura und ihr Mann haben Kinder—vier Jugendliche und ein Baby. Sie haben so viele Kinder…und Restaurants sind teuer. Alles im Restaurant kostet zu viel.

1. Woher kommt Laura?
2. Woher kommt Lauras Mann?
3. Ist Lauras Mann Italiener?
4. Wo arbeitet Lauras Mann?
5. Wie lange arbeiten Laura und ihr Mann?

6. Was macht Laura nicht gern?
7. Wie viele Kinder hat Laura?
8. Warum sind Restaurants ein Problem für Laura?

14. Section 1-14

1-14: Oral Proficiency Interview Practice:

Ex. 1: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

You are left alone with your best friend's grandmother. Start a conversation to pass the time. Ask several questions to get to know her better.

Ex. 2: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

You will be studying abroad next semester and call your future host family to introduce yourself. Tell them all about you and your hobbies.

Ex. 3: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

You are talking with a friend about your schedule next semester. Ask your friend several questions about his/her opinion on several classes. Then give your own opinion about these classes.

Ex. 4: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

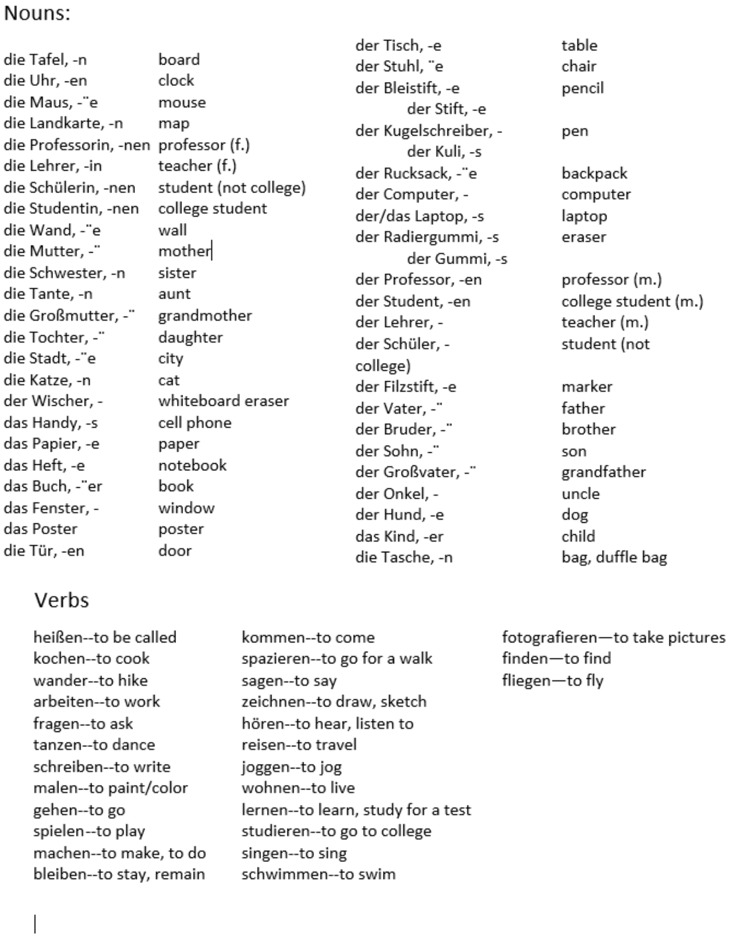
You are babysitting for one of your coworkers' relatives. Ask the parent of the child several questions about her child.

Tips:

- Look back through the chapter to see what you might already know how to say.
- Write/say as much as you can about each topic as it relates to the above scenarios.
- Stick to what you've learned so far; don't worry yet about the grammar topics you haven't learned yet. That will come soon enough!
- Use lots of details. Saying more is always better!

15. Chapter 1 - Glossary

Kapitel 1 Wortschatz



Nouns:

die Tafel, -n	board
die Uhr, -en	clock
die Maus, -¨e	mouse
die Landkarte, -n	map
die Professorin, -nen	professor (f.)
die Lehrer, -in	teacher (f.)
die Schülerin, -nen	student (not college)
die Studentin, -nen	college student
die Wand, -¨e	wall
die Mutter, -¨	mother
die Schwester, -n	sister
die Tante, -n	aunt
die Großmutter, -¨	grandmother
die Tochter, -¨	daughter
die Stadt, -¨e	city
die Katze, -n	cat
der Wischer, -	whiteboard eraser
das Handy, -s	cell phone
das Papier, -e	paper
das Heft, -e	notebook
das Buch, -¨er	book
das Fenster, -	window
das Poster	poster
die Tür, -en	door

der Tisch, -e	table
der Stuhl, ¨e	chair
der Bleistift, -e	pencil
der Stift, -e	
der Kugelschreiber, -	pen
der Kuli, -s	
der Rucksack, -¨e	backpack
der Computer, -	computer
der/das Laptop, -s	laptop
der Radiergummi, -s	eraser
der Gummi, -s	
der Professor, -en	professor (m.)
der Student, -en	college student (m.)
der Lehrer, -	teacher (m.)
der Schüler, -	student (not
college)	
der Filzstift, -e	marker
der Vater, -¨	father
der Bruder, -¨	brother
der Sohn, -¨	son
der Großvater, -¨	grandfather
der Onkel, -	uncle
der Hund, -e	dog
das Kind, -er	child
die Tasche, -n	bag, duffle bag

Verbs

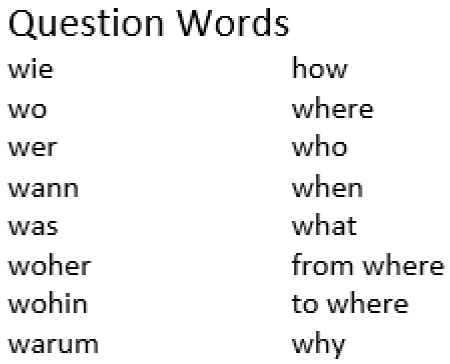
heißen--to be called
kochen--to cook
wander--to hike
arbeiten--to work
fragen--to ask
tanzen--to dance
schreiben--to write
malen--to paint/color
gehen--to go
spielen--to play
machen--to make, to do
bleiben--to stay, remain

kommen--to come
spazieren--to go for a walk
sagen--to say
zeichnen--to draw, sketch
hören--to hear, listen to
reisen--to travel
joggen--to jog
wohnen--to live
lernen--to learn, study for a test
studieren--to go to college
singen--to sing
schwimmen--to swim

fotografieren—to take pictures
finden—to find
fliegen—to fly

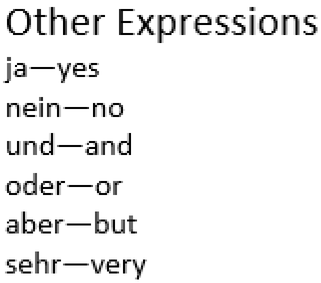
Adjectives

alt	old	fleißig	hardworking
laut	loud	freundlich	friendly
faul	lazy	arm	poor
groß	tall	einfach	easy, simple
gesund	healthy	schwierig	difficult, hard
jung	young	wichtig	important
klein	small	schlecht	bad
komisch	strange, odd	gut	good
krank	sick	wolkig	cloudy
langweilig	boring	sonnig	sonny
müde	tired	neblig	foggy
pünktlich	punctual	regnerisch	rainy
reich	rich	windig	windy
kalt	cold	warm	warm
heiß	hot	kühl	cool



Question Words

wie	how
wo	where
wer	who
wann	when
was	what
woher	from where
wohin	to where
warum	why



Other Expressions

ja—yes
nein—no
und—and
oder—or
aber—but
sehr—very

16. Section 2-1

Kapitel 2

In Chapter 1, you learned numbers up through the thousands. In this chapter, you will use them to tell time.

Ex. A: Video. Nicos Weg. Click the link to watch episode 9, “Zahlen von 1 bis 100” to review numbers. Do the exercises after the video.

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/zahlen-von-1-bis-100/l-37265621.

Ex. B: Video. Nicos Weg. Click the link to watch episode 10, „Wichtige Nummern.“ You will review how to say your age from Chapter 1. You will also learn how to ask for someone’s telephone number.

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/wichtige-nummern/l-37269501.

2.1: Telling Time (unofficial/conversational)

Telling time in German uses basic numbers that you already know. It will be used to answer the following questions.

- Wie viel Uhr ist es? (What time is it?/“How much clock is it?”)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-1

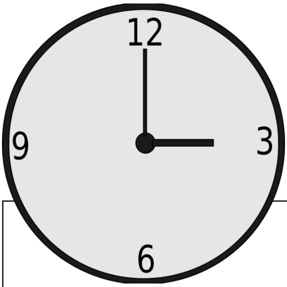
- Wie spät ist es? (How late is it?)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-2

- Wie viel Uhr haben wir? (What time do we have?)

Start with the expression "Es ist," then list the number.

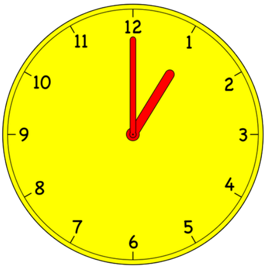
Time on the exact hour:



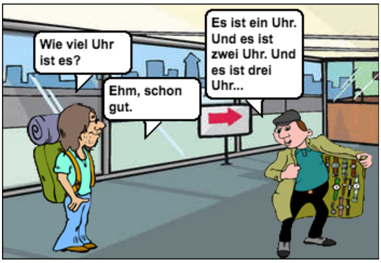
Es ist drei Uhr. (It is three o'clock.) [Audio clips courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

Shorter form: *Es ist drei.* (It is three.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-3


12
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11

Es ist ein Uhr. (It is one o'clock.) Shorter form: *Es ist eins*. (It is one.)

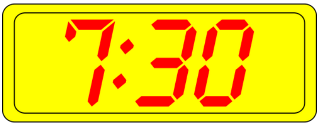

Wie viel Uhr ist es?
Ehm, schon gut.
Es ist ein Uhr. Und es ist zwei Uhr. Und es ist drei Uhr...

schon gut—never mind

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#h5p-29

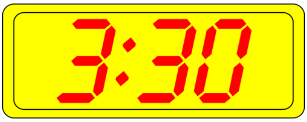
Time on the half-hour:

To tell the time on the half-hour, German rounds up to the next hour.



Es ist halb acht. Longer form: Es ist halb acht Uhr.

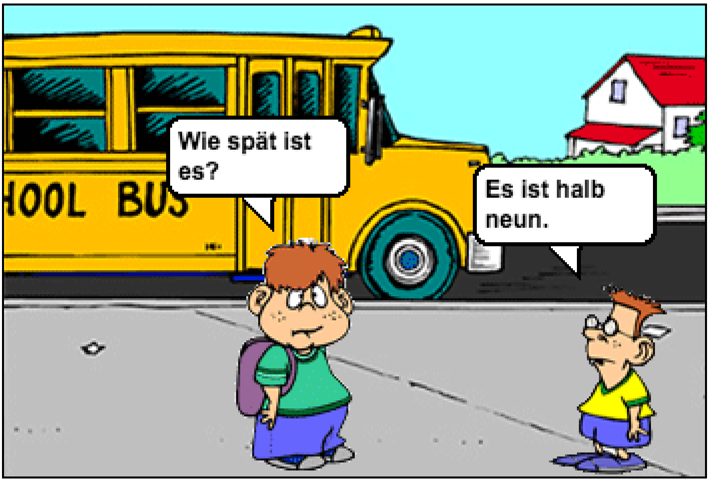
halb—half

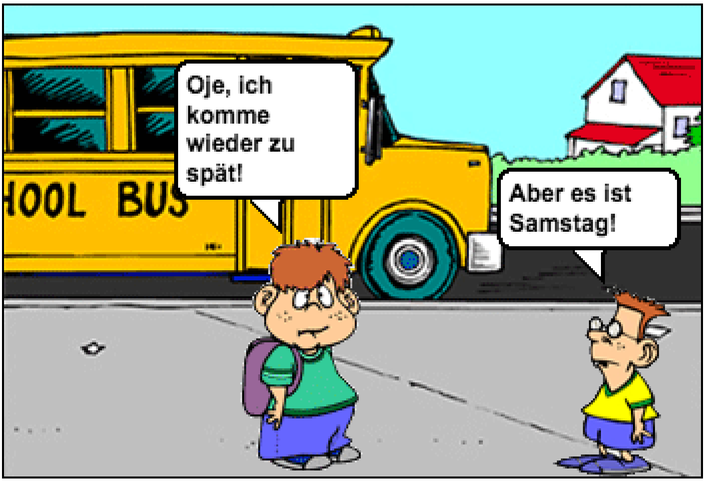


Es ist halb vier. (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

Longer form: Es ist halb vier Uhr.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-4

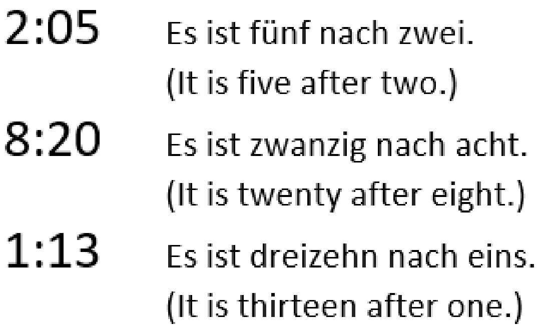

Wie spät ist es?
Es ist halb neun.
HOOL BUS


Oje, ich komme wieder zu spät!
Aber es ist Samstag!
HOOL BUS

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#h5p-30

Time after the hour:

To say that it is just past the hour, use the word *nach*, “after,” to say how much after the hour it is.



2:05 Es ist fünf nach zwei.
(It is five after two.)

8:20 Es ist zwanzig nach acht.
(It is twenty after eight.)

1:13 Es ist dreizehn nach eins.
(It is thirteen after one.)

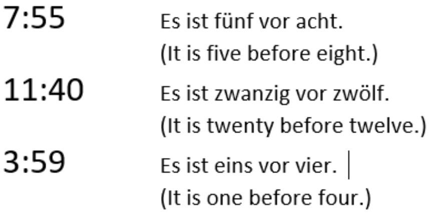
3:05 Es ist fünf nach drei. (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-5

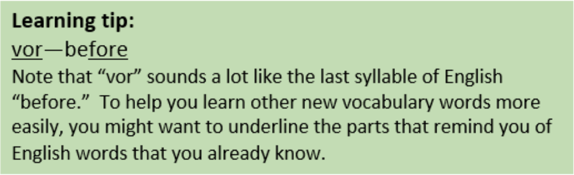
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#h5p-31

Time before the hour:

To say that it is just before the next hour, use the word *vor*, „before,“ to say how much before the next hour it is.



7:55	Es ist fünf vor acht. (It is five before eight.)
11:40	Es ist zwanzig vor zwölf. (It is twenty before twelve.)
3:59	Es ist eins vor vier. (It is one before four.)



Learning tip:
vor—before
Note that “vor” sounds a lot like the last syllable of English “before.” To help you learn other new vocabulary words more easily, you might want to underline the parts that remind you of English words that you already know.

3:40 Es ist zwanzig vor vier. (Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-6

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#h5p-32

Telling time on the quarter hour:

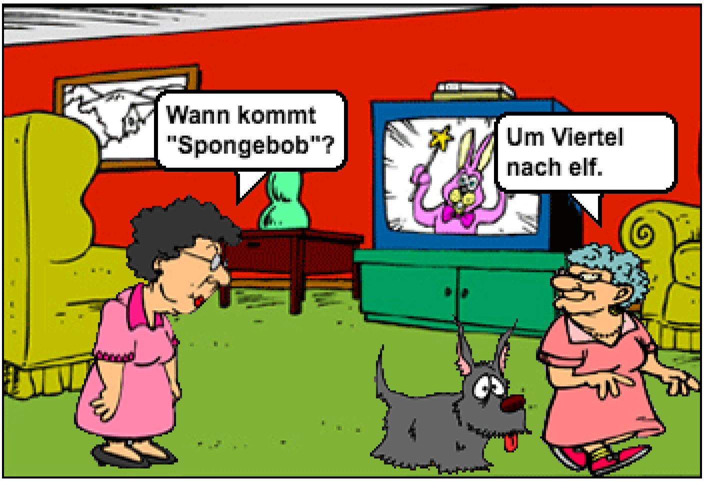
Just like English, German has a word that means “fifteen minutes” before or after the hour. **Viertel**—quarter (hour). Note that *Viertel* is capitalized because it is a noun; all German nouns are capitalized.

A: Wie viel Uhr ist es? (What time is it?)
B: Es ist Viertel nach neun. (It is a quarter after nine.)

A: Wie spät ist es? (How late is it?)
B: Es ist Viertel vor vier. (It is a quarter before/to four.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#audio-532-7

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)


Wann kommt "Spongebob"?
Um Viertel nach elf.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#h5p-33

Video. Click to see me reteaching how to tell time in German.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=532#oembed-1

To say that something happens **AT** a certain time, use the preposition *um.*

A: Wann hast du Deutsch?
B: Ich habe Deutsch **um** elf Uhr.

Ex. H: Partnerarbeit. **Julias Stundenplan.**Take turns with your partner to ask each other when Julia has the following classes. Don't forget to use the preposition *um* to say at what time she has these classes.

Beispiel:

A: Wann hat Julia Englisch?
B: Sie hat Englisch um halb neun.

English	8:30		Philosophie	12:20
Deutsch	9:45		Sport	1:30
Musik	10:10		Mathe	1:55
eine Pause	11:00		Chemie	2:40

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website for more practice with telling time.

- https://www.germanzone.org/time-telling-time-2-colloquial/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/telling-time-1-colloquial-

time/.

Click the link to go to a matching game that will review all of the time expressions you have learned.

- https://www.purposegames.com/de/game/telling-time-in-german-quiz.

17. Section 2-2

2.2. Food, Drink, and Family Members

In Chapter 1, you learned most vocabulary relating to the family. Below are more family member vocabulary words.

der Cousin—cousin (male)
die Cousine—cousin (female)
die Nichte—niece
der Neffe—nephew
der Schwager—brother-in-law
die Schwägerin—sister-in-law

der Enkel—grandson
die Enkelin—granddaughter
das Enkelkind—grandchild
Eltern—parents (always plural)
Geschwister—siblings (pl.)

Here are a few new adjectives to describe these and other family members.

ledig—single
verheiratet—married
verlobt—engaged
geschieden—divorced
kinderlos—childless

In Chapter 1, you also learned that *der Mann* is "the man" and *die Frau* is "the woman." Both of these words also have a second definition.

der Mann—the husband (or *der Ehemann*)

die Frau—the wife (or *die Ehefrau*)

You may be wondering how to know the difference between them. If you use a possessive adjective with these words, they usually mean "husband" and "wife." Compare.

Mein Mann spielt Golf.	(**My husband** plays golf.)
Der Mann spielt Golf.	(**The man** plays golf.)
Seine Frau spielt Klavier.	(**His wife** plays piano.)
Die Frau spielt Klavier.	(**The woman** plays piano.)

EXTRA PRACTICE: Click on Germanzone.org's online exercises to review the family members from Chapter 1 and practice the new family member vocabulary from this chapter.

- https://www.germanzone.org/die-familie-1-der-familienstammbaum/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/die-familie-2-der-familienstammbaum/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/die-familie-3/.

In Chapter 1, you also learned about possessive adjectives.

Singular	**Plural**
mein/meine—my	unser/unsere—our
dein/deine—your (informal)	euer/eure—y'alls (you guys')
sein/seine—his sein/seine—its ihr/ihre—her	ihr/ihre—their Ihr/Ihre—your (polite)

EXTRA PRACTICE: Click on Germanzone.org's family tree exercise to practice new vocabulary words and to review possessive adjectives.

- https://www.germanzone.org/possessive-adjectives-2-die-familie/.

Ex. A: Was macht Ihre Familie gern? Using possessive adjectives (see chart above) and family members, tell what everyone in your family likes to do. Write at least 6-8 sentences.

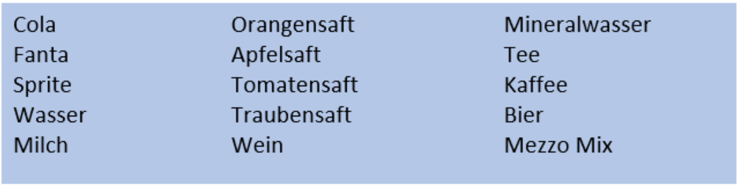
Beispiel: **Meine** Mutter kocht gern. **Mein** Vater kocht nicht gern.

Video. Watch Coffeebreak German's video to hear Germans talking about their families. The first half is without subtitles, and the second half repeats with subtitles.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-1

We can take it one step further and talk about everyone's favorite drinks.

Beispiel: Ich trinke gern Cola. Meine Schwester trinkt gern Sprite.



Cola
Fanta
Sprite
Wasser
Milch
Orangensaft
Apfelsaft
Tomatensaft
Traubensaft
Wein
Mineralwasser
Tee
Kaffee
Bier
Mezzo Mix

Ex. B: Was trinken Sie gern? Was trinken Sie nicht gern?

Ich trinke gern ____________. Ich trinke nicht gern ____________.

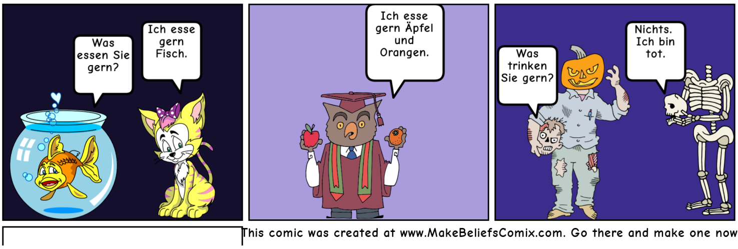
(I like to drink ____________. I do not like to drink ____________.)

Was trinkt ihre Familie gern? Nicht gern?

Mein Cousin trinkt gern __________. Er trinkt nicht gern _________.

Meine Nichte trinkt gern _________. Sie trinkt nicht gern _________.

…usw


Was essen Sie gern?
Ich esse gern Fisch.
Ich esse gern Äpfel und Orangen.
Was trinken Sie gern?
Nichts. Ich bin tot.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. C: Was essen Sie gern? Was essen Sie nicht gern? (If you don't know all of these foods yet, go here to see pictures of them: VISUAL LEARNER DICTIONARY)

Brot
Fleisch
Wurst
Käse
Joghurt
Suppe
Tomaten
Trauben
Zwiebeln
Brokkoli
Äpfel
Speck
Sellerie
Fisch
Reis
Nudeln
Hähnchen
Kartoffeln
Eier
Steak
Sushi
Kuchen
Bananen
Schinken
Kekse
Eis
Chips
Pizza
Spaghetti
Bohnen
Erbsen
Möhren
Karotten
Gemüse
Mais
Spargel
Obst
Kohl
Gurken
Salat
Hamburger
Schnitzel
Pommes frites
(Fritten)
Schokolade
Orangen
Koteletts
Erdbeeren

Ich esse gern _________. Ich esse nicht gern __________.
(I like to eat __________. I do not like to eat __________.)

QUICK LISTENING: Listen to Mathilda (AudioLingua) talk about what she likes and doesn't like to eat and drink. Make a list of the foods and drinks you hear.

- Essen
- Getränke

One or more interactive elements has been *excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#audio-534-1*

Finally, watch *Deutsch im Blick*'s video of a fruit and veggie seller talking about her wares. You will hear several new food words from this section and prices. You won't understand everything; just listen for key words!

(Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#video-534-1

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#video-534-2

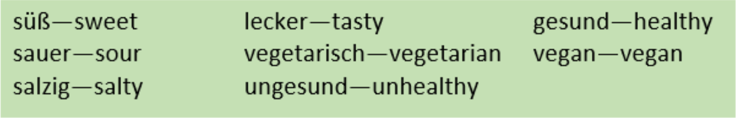
MORE FOOD: Check out Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) activity for more examples of food:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#h5p-109

Ex. D: Listening Practice. Listen to the following audio clips about what Anke likes to eat and drink and fill in the missing blanks. (Audio courtesy of AudioLingua user Anke.

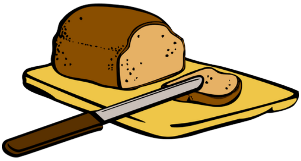
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#h5p-127

Ex. E: Beschreiben Sie Ihr Essen! Using the adjectives, express your opinion on the following foods in a complete sentence.



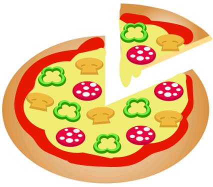
süß—sweet
sauer—sour
salzig—salty
lecker—tasty
vegetarisch—vegetarian
ungesund—unhealthy
gesund—healthy
vegan—vegan

Beispiel:

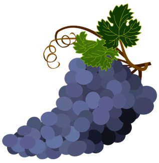


→Ich finde Brot sehr lecker.

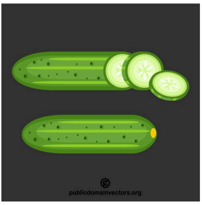
1.



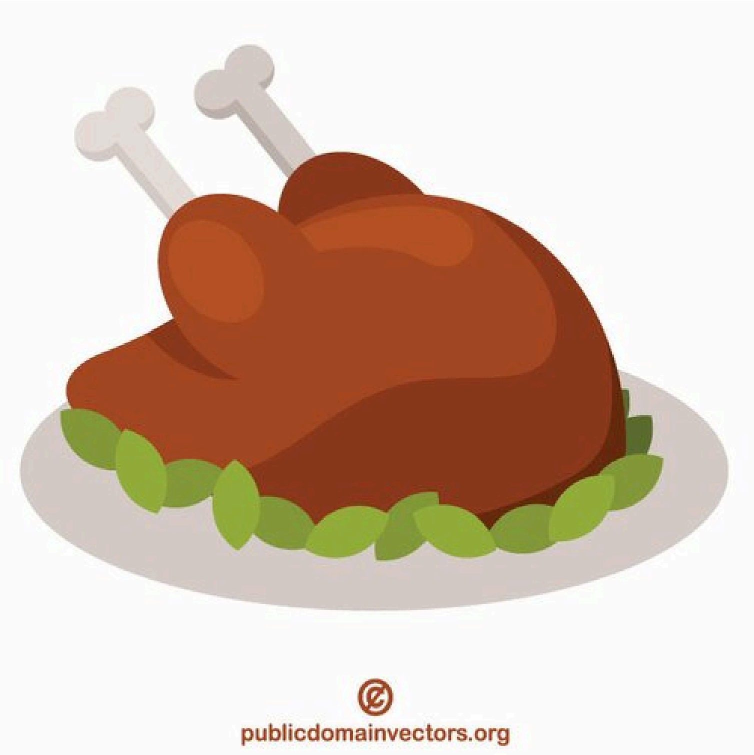
2.



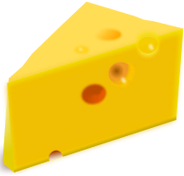
3.


publicdomainvectors.org

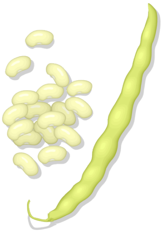
4.

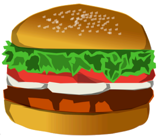

publicdomainvectors.org

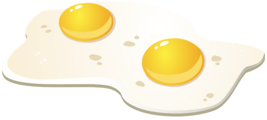
5.

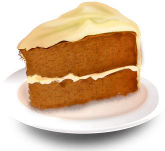


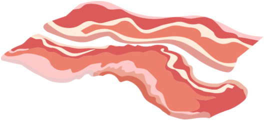
6.

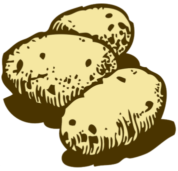


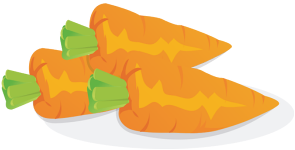
7.


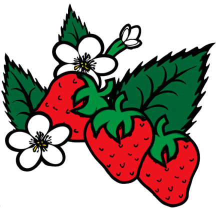
8.


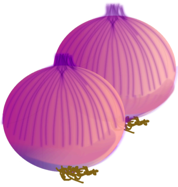
9.


10.

.

11.


12.


13.


14.


Ex. F: Ordnen Sie das Essen den Kategorien zu! Using the vocabulary list of foods, put each item under the appropriate category.

gesund	nicht gesund	vegetarisch	vegan

süß	lecker	Obst	Gemüse

Milchprodukte	Fastfood	Fleisch

Video. Watch Easy German’s video to hear more about fruit vocabulary words.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-2

Favorites

To express that something is your favorite, attach the prefix *Lieblings–* to any noun.

- Lieblingsbuch→favorite book
- Lieblingsessen→favorite food
- Lieblingsgetränk→favorite drink
- Lieblingsperson→favorite person
- Lieblingskurs→favorite class/subject

Quick Listening: Philip and Michelle from AudioLingua. Was ist sein Lieblingsessen? Was ist ihr Lieblingsessen?

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#audio-534-2

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#audio-534-3

KULTURECKE: Döner–a German favorite from Turkey! Watch Deutsch im Blick's video. A Döner restaurant owner describes which foods go together with Döner. (Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#video-534-3

Ex. G: Was ist dein Lieblingsessen? With a partner, ask each other the following questions. Answer in complete sentences. Don't forget to put the correct ending on "mein/e" that corresponds with the gender of the word.

Beispiel: Lieblingsbuch

A: Was ist dein Lieblingsbuch?
B: Mein Lieblingsbuch ist *Herr der Ringe.*

1. Lieblingsessen
2. Lieblingsgetränk
3. Lieblingsperson (Hint: Use „wer“ instead of “was”!)
4. Lieblingskurs
5. Lieblingsfilm
6. Lieblingssport
7. Lieblingsspiel
8. Lieblingsland

Video. Watch Easy German’s video to hear Germans answering the question, “Was ist dein Lieblingsobst?”

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-3

Video. Favorite Food. Watch Easy German’s video to hear Germans answering the question “Was ist Ihr Lieblingsessen?”

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-4

Look through Claudia Kost’s and Crystal Sawatzky’s (University of Alberta) slides to see some typical foods eaten for lunch in Germany:

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#h5p-110

Deutsche Musik: Listen to Namika's hit song, „Lieblingsmensch,“ (2015) to practice *Lieblings-*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-5

Ex. H: Essen Sie gern asiatisch? Ask your classmates how well they like the following types of food.

Beispiel: vietnamesisch
A: Essen Sie gern vietnamesisch?
B: Ja, ich esse gern vietnamesisch?
ODER
B: Nein, ich esse nicht gern vietnamesisch?

1. italienisch
2. deutsch
3. türkisch
4. griechisch
5. mexikanisch
6. indisch
7. japanisch
8. chinesisch
9. amerikanisch

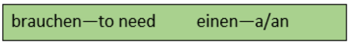
Ex. I: Typisch deutsch! Watch Easy German's video about traditional German food and give a short description of the foods below. Use the adjectives that you have learned so far, such as those on page 12, or larger classifying categories, such as *Fleisch*, *Gemüse*, oder *Obst*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-6

Beispiel: Spätzle (plural)
→Spätzle sind Nudeln. Sie sind vegetarisch.

1. Kartoffelpuffer (pl.)
2. Spargel (sing.)
3. Bratkartoffeln (pl.)
4. Leberkäse (sing.)
5. Maultaschen (pl.)
6. Pfannkuchen (sing.)
7. Bockwurst (sing.)
8. Kartoffelsalat (sing.)
9. Rouladen (pl.)
10. Grünkohl (sing.)
11. Erbsensuppe (sing.)
12. Currywurst (sing.)

Ex. J: Was brauchen wir? What do we need to make the dishes below? Write complete sentences.


brauchen—to need einen—a/an

Beispiel: Wir machen Spaghetti. Was brauchen wir?
→Wir brauchen Nudeln, Tomaten und Fleisch.

1. Wir machen eine Pizza. Was brauchen wir?

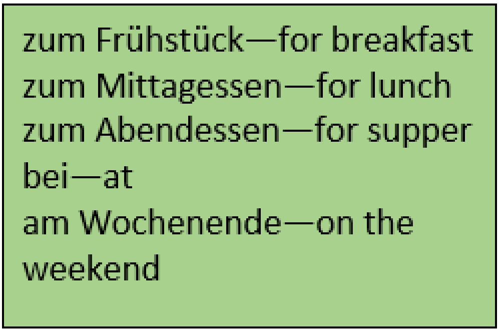
2. Wir machen Gemüsesuppe. Was brauchen wir?
3. Wir machen einen Salat. Was brauchen wir?
4. Wir machen einen Obstsalat. Was brauchen wir?
5. Wir machen einen Hamburger. Was brauchen wir?
6. Wir machen Gulasch. Was brauchen wir?

KULTURECKE: Watch *Deutsch im Blick*'s video of Andrew and Austin in a German supermarket. Was brauchen sie? (Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#video-534-4

Ex. K: Was essen Sie? What do you eat and drink for the following meals? Answer in complete sentences.

1. Was essen Sie zum Frühstück?



zum Frühstück—for breakfast
zum Mittagessen—for lunch
zum Abendessen—for supper
bei—at
am Wochenende—on the weekend

2. Was trinken Sie zum Frühstück
3. Was essen Sie zum Mittagessen?
4. Was trinken Sie zum Mittagessen?
5. Was essen Sie zum Abendessen?
6. Was trinken Sie zum Abendessen?

7. Was essen Sie bei McDonald's?
8. Was trinken Sie bei McDonald's?
9. Was essen Sie und trinken Sie am Wochenende?

Watch Easy German's video to see more about *Frühstück* in slow German.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-7

Video: Watch Easy German's video, "Lunch Break," in extra slow German.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-8

EXTRA PRACTICE: Want more food words and more practice with them? The following exercises will help you with both.

- https://www.germanzone.org/essen-und-trinken-2-kategorien/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/essen-und-trinken-1/.

Ich trinke Cola und spiele Fortnite!

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=534#oembed-9

18. Section 2-3

2.3—The Accusative Case

So far in this chapter, you have been making sentences that have both subjects and direct objects.

Subject: the person or thing DOING the action

Direct object: the thing that gets the action DONE by the verb

Beispiel: Sein Vater trinkt gern Apfelsaft.
(subject) (verb) (direct object)

- Subject→*sein Vater* (the person doing the drinking)
- Verb→*trinkt* (the action)
- Direct object→*Apfelsaft* (the thing being drunk)

In Chapter 1, you learned that the subject of a sentence is in the **nominative case**. Now we will add to that; the direct object is in the **accusative case**.

Nominative case: subject

Accusative case: direct object

Normally, the direct object comes after the verb in German sentences, but not always! Remember, as you learned in Chapter 1, we can switch around different elements in a German sentence, as long as the verb remains in 2nd position. The direct object of each sentence below is in bold print.

Ich habe zwei **Schwestern**.	I have two **sisters**.
Meine Tante hat **einen Freund**.	My aunt has **a boyfriend**.
Unser Cousin trinkt **kein Bier**.	Our cousin drinks **no beer**.
Wir spielen gern **Fußball**.	We like to play **soccer**.

So far, you have been making several sentences that have direct objects, using words for food, drinks, and hobbies. Direct objects are in the **accusative case.** When we use definite articles (der/die/das) and indefinite articles (ein/eine), as well as possessive adjectives and negation (kein/keine) as direct objects, there are some slight changes.

NEU! You might have noticed an extra *–en* at the end of the word "einen."

*Meine Tante hat ein**en** Freund.*

Masculine words will add an extra *–en* to the definite article, indefinite article, possessive adjectives, and "kein." (ONLY masculine! Everything else stays the same.) In the examples below, the extra *–en* has been bold-faced. The direct object has been underlined. The masculine examples have been prefaced with a *.

*Wir kaufen ein**en** Kuli.	(Masculine „Kuli" adds *–en.*)
Du kaufst ein Heft.	(Neuter „Heft" stays the same.)
*Ich habe kein**en** Cousin.	(Masculine "Cousin" adds *–en.*)
Er hat keine Tochter.	(Feminine „Tochter" stays the same.)
*Karin braucht mein**en** Gummi.	(Masculine „Gummi adds *–en.*)
Ihr kocht meine Suppe.	(Feminine „Suppe" stays the same.)
*Du kennst sein**en** Enkel.	(Masculine "Enkel" adds *–en.*)
Wir sehen die Kinder.	(Plural "Kinder" stays the same.)

Der Student liest euer Buch. (Neuter „Buch“ stays the same.)

The definite article “der” becomes “den” in the accusative.

Frau Koltz kauft **den** Computer. *Frau Koltz is buying the computer.*

Du und ich lesen **den** Roman. *You and I are reading the novel.*

Sehen Sie **den** Mann? *Do you see the man?*

An easy way to practice using the accusative case is to use the verb *haben* to talk about which family members you have and don’t have.

Ich habe eine Schwester.	(Feminine stays the same.)
I have a sister.	
Ich habe ein**en** Vater.	(Masculine adds *–en*.)
I have a father.	

If you don’t have certain family members, use the correct form of *kein* to say that you don’t.

Ich habe kein**en** Bruder.	(Masculine adds *–en*.)
I have no brother.	
Ich habe kein Kind.	(Neuter stays the same.)
I have no child.	

ADMIT
ONE
MISTAKE

TYPICAL MISTAKE: After learning the accusative case, students often want to give every single masculine word in the sentence an extra *–en*. Don’t do it. It’s only for the direct object.

INCORRECT: *~~Meinen~~ Vater kauft den Computer.*

CORRECT: *Mein Vater kauft den Computer.*

ONLY use the accusative case for a direct object, aka. *the thing being done*.

Video: Click the links to see me reteaching the accusative case.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-1

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-2

Video: Click to watch YourGermanProfessor's video reteaching the accusative case with lots of examples.

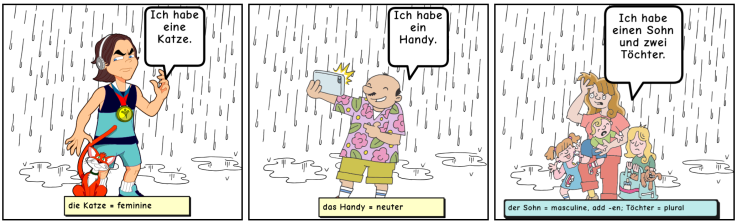
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-3

Video: Click to watch *The German Professor*'s video on the accusative case.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-4

Video: Watch *Easy German*'s videos to see lots of examples of sentences that use the accusative case.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-5


Ich habe eine Katze.
die Katze = feminine
Ich habe ein Handy.
das Handy = neuter
Ich habe einen Sohn und zwei Töchter.
der Sohn = masculine, add -en; Töchter = plural

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. A: Beschreiben Sie Ihre Familie! Which family members do you have or not have? Go through the list in both Chapters 1 and 2, using the accusative case AFTER the verb *haben*, as in the examples on the previous page.

Beispiel: *Ich habe eine Mutter. Ich habe einen Vater*…usw.

LISTENING PRACTICE: Listen to Linda introduce herself and tell about which family members she has and which hobbies. You won't understand everything, but don't worry; you're just listening for family members and hobbies for now. Then fill in the blanks with the correct answers. (Audio courtesy of Linda from AudioLingua.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-128

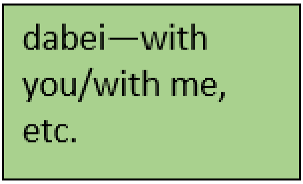
Now listen to Finn introduce himself and tell about family members. (Audio courtesy of Finn from AudioLingua.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#audio-536-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-129

Ex. B: Was haben Sie dabei? What do you have with you today? Describe your items, using the verb *haben* and the accusative case.

Beispiel: *Ich habe ein Buch, ein**en** Kuli und ein Heft dabei. Ich habe kein**en** Laptop dabei.*



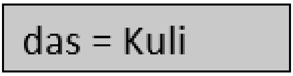
dabei—with you/with me, etc.

Predicate Nominatives:

It's easy to get in the habit of assuming that the last noun in the sentence is the direct object. Here are some instances where the last word is still in the nominative case. We call these **predicate nominatives**.

The verb *sein* (to be) is always followed by the nominative case. Any form of *sein* (ist, bist, sind, bin, seid) acts like an equal sign that makes one side of the sentence exactly equal to the other.

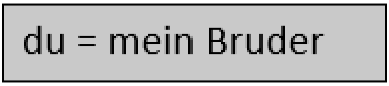
Das ist ein Kuli.



das = Kuli

Therefore "ein Kuli" is nominative. We don't put an extra –en at the end because it is **not** accusative.

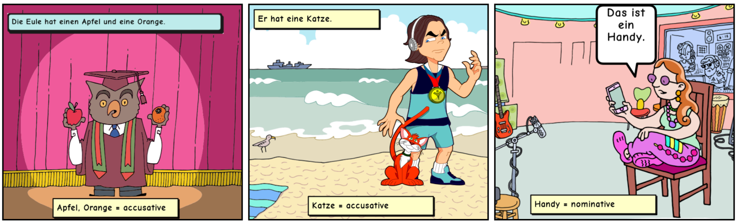
Du bist mein Bruder.



du = mein Bruder

Therefore "mein Bruder" is nominative. We don't add an extra –en at the end because it is **not** accusative.

Always check to see if your sentence has a form of sein; if it does, then your sentence doesn't have a direct object, aka accusative case. It has a predicate nominative instead.


Die Eule hat einen Apfel und eine Orange.
Apfel, Orange = accusative
Er hat eine Katze.
Katze = accusative
Das ist ein Handy.
Handy = nominative

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video: Watch *Easy German*'s video to see lots of examples with both nominative and accusative. The first example will always be a predicate nominative, which you read about on the previous page, and the second will be in the accusative.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-6

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-35

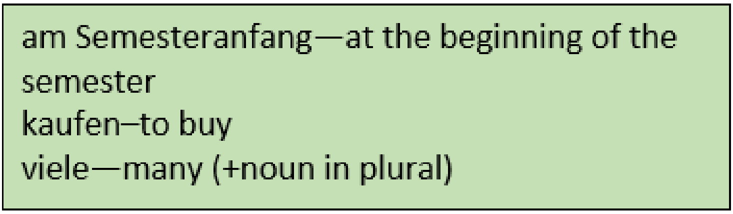
Now let's take it one step further. In the next exercise, you will have to determine whether the blank is in the nominative or the accusative before filling in the blank.

Step 1: Determine whether the word is in the nominative or accusative (aka subject or direct object.)

Step 2: If it is accusative, masculine adds an extra –*en*; *der* becomes *den*.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-36

Ex. E: Was kaufen Sie am Semesteranfang? What do you buy at the beginning of the semester? Practice using the accusative case to tell a partner what you buy each semester. Remember, the things **being bought** are direct objects. Masculine items should get an extra *–en.*


am Semesteranfang—at the beginning of the semester
kaufen–to buy
viele—many (+noun in plural)

A: Was kaufst du am Semesteranfang?
B: Ich kaufe ein**en** Rucksack, viele Bücher und ein Heft.

KULTURECKE: Watch Deutsch im Blick's video about shopping for groceries. *Was kaufen Austin und Andrew?* (Used with permission from The University of Texas at Austin | coerll.utexas.edu.)

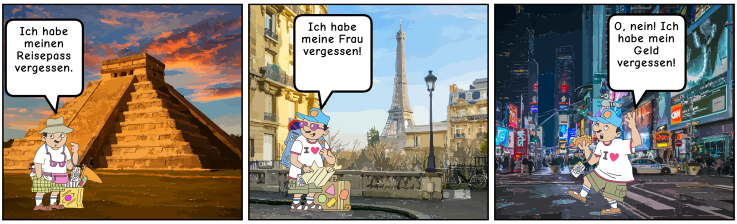
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#video-536-1

Ex. F: Was haben Sie heute vergessen? What have you forgotten today? Remember to put the items **being forgotten** into the accusative case because they are direct objects.

A: Was hast du heute vergessen?

B: Ich habe _________, ________ und ________ vergessen.

vergessen—forgotten


Ich habe meinen Reisepass vergessen.
Ich habe meine Frau vergessen!
O, nein! Ich habe mein Geld vergessen!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

der Reisepass—passport

Ex. G: Video. Nicos Weg. Folge 11: "Adressen." Click the link to watch episode 11. Then do the online activities with it. You will here a new verb, *suchen*, which means "to look for, search for." You will also review question words. If you need a review, look back in chapter 1.

die Hausnummer—house number
die Straße—street
die Polizei—police
To say you live on a street, use the preposition "in." →Ich wohne **in** der Schillerstraße.

NOTE: Germans don't ask WHAT a telephone number is but instead HOW a telephone number is→ **Wie** *ist Ihre Telefonnummer?* or *Wie ist deine Telefonnummer?*

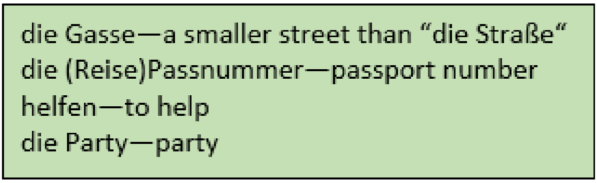
https://learngerman.dw.com/en/adressen/l-37269671.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#audio-536-2

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-37

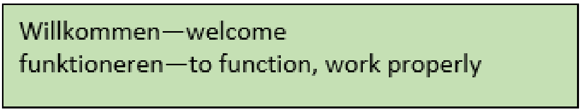
Ex. I: Video. Nicos Weg. Folge 12: Auf dem Amt. Click to watch episode 12 and do the activities following it. You will review *du vs. Sie* again, as well as formal and informal greetings and numbers in the hundreds.



die Gasse—a smaller street than "die Straße"
die (Reise)Passnummer—passport number
helfen—to help
die Party—party

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/auf-dem-amt/l-37269629.

Ex. J: Video. Nicos Weg. Folge 13: Was machst du hier? Click to watch episode 13 and do the activities following it.



Willkommen—welcome
funktioneren—to function, work properly

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/was-machst-du-hier/l-37278679.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-38

Answers:

1. *deinen*; Cousin is the direct object and masculine. Therefore "dein" becomes "deinen."
2. *ihr/ihre*; Both words are the subject. Enkelin is feminine, so therefore ihr + e = ihre.
3. *meine*; The word is plural and the subject. Mein adds an e for plural.
4. *euer*; The word is a direct object and neuter. Nothing changes.
5. *Ihre*; Zeitung is the direct object and feminine. Ihr + e = Ihre.
6. *sein*; Vater is the subject. I know it probably looks like it's the direct object, but rephrase the question so that it's a sentence: Sein Vater liest was. "His father reads what." "What" is your direct object and father is the subject.
7. *unsere*; Bücher is a plural word and a direct object. Unser + e = unsere.
8. *meinen*; Onkel is the direct object and masculine. Therefore mein takes an extra –en because it changes in the accusative case.
9. *ihre*; Kinder is a plural and a subject. "Ihr" + e = ihre.
10. *einen/eine*; Both words are direct objects. The first is masculine and adds an extra –en in the accusative. The second is feminine.
11. *Der/den*; In the first blank, it is the subject and stays "der." In the second, it has become the direct object, and masculine direct objects in the accusative change to "den."

More Extra Practice with Possessive Adjectives and Nominative vs. Accusative: (Courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta.) Hint: you'll have to use context to figure out whether it's *my*, *your*, *his*, *our*…usw.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-105

Extra Practice with the accusative case:

Click the links to do extra practice on Germanzone.org's website. It will grade your answers automatically. If you want to do the exercise again, the site will give you different questions so that you can practice as much as you like.

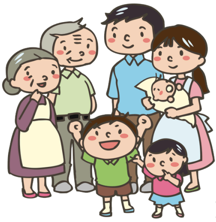
- Nominative vs. accusative: https://www.germanzone.org/nominative-accusative-cases-mixed-determiners/.
- Identifying the direct object: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-direct-objects/.
- Accusative case: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-mixed-determiners-1/.
- Accusative case: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-mixed-determiners-2/.
- Accusative case with new vocabulary; don't be afraid to look up any words you don't know. https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-possessive-adjectives/.
- Accusative case with indefinite articles: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-indefinite-articles-1/.
- Accusative case with indefinite articles 2: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-indefinite-articles-2/.
- More advanced accusative exercises:

https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-definite-articles/.

- Subject, predicate nominative, or direct object? https://www.germanzone.org/subject-predicate-noun-direct-object-1/.

Es gibt + accusative

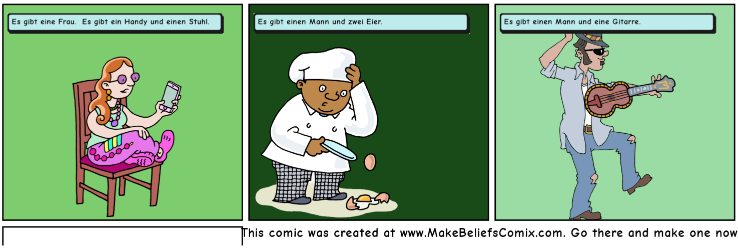
To say “There is…” or “There are…” in German, we don’t use the verb *sein*, as in English. **Instead,** we use the idiomatic expression, “Es gibt…”



Es gibt eine Familie.

The noun that comes after the phrase “Es gibt” MUST be in the accusative case. That means that anything masculine must add an extra –*en* to the definite article, indefinite article, or possessive adjectives.

Es gibt ein**en** Vater und eine Mutter.
Es gibt ein**en** Großvater und eine Großmutter.
Es gibt zwei Kinder und ein Baby.


Es gibt eine Frau. Es gibt ein Handy und einen Stuhl.
Es gibt einen Mann und zwei Eier.
Es gibt einen Mann und eine Gitarre.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. K: Was gibt es in diesem Zimmer? What is there in this room? Answer using “Es gibt” followed by the accusative case.

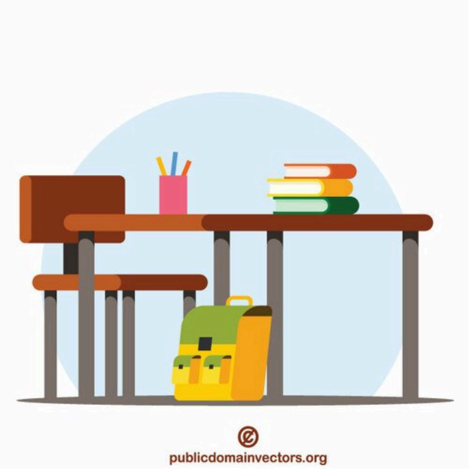
A: Was gibt es in diesem Zimmer?
B: Es gibt einen Tisch, _______, _______ usw.

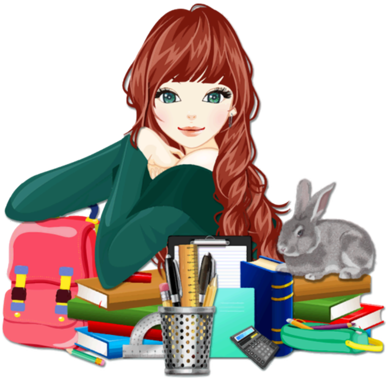
Ex. L: Was gibt es in Ihrem Rucksack? What is there in your backpack? Answer using “Es gibt” followed by the accusative case.

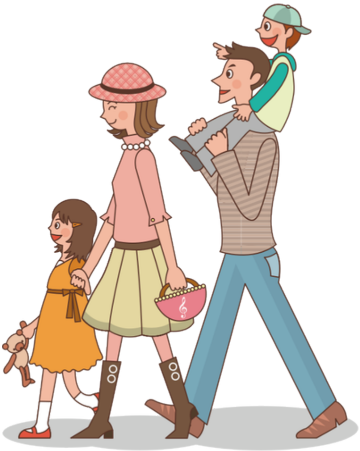
A: Was gibt es in Ihrem Rucksack?

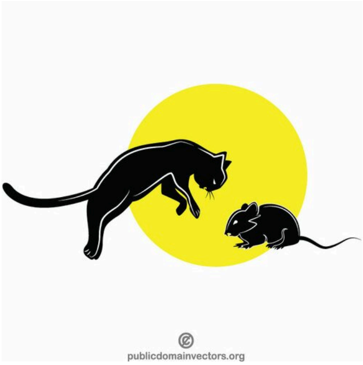
B: Es gibt _________, _________ und _________.

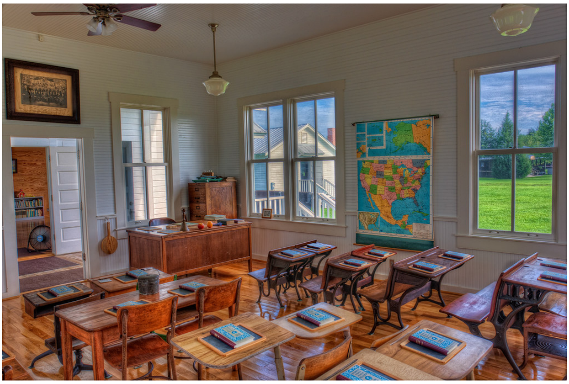
Ex. M: Was gibt es? Answer using as many complete sentences as possible for each picture.

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 
publicdomainvectors.org

5. 

"Classroom in Fort Christmas" by Photomatt28 is marked with CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-39

Listen to Santiano's hit song, *Es gibt nur Wasser* (2012), to hear the phrase "Es gibt…" used extensively. You will also hear the verb *brauchen*, which appeared earlier in this chapter.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#oembed-7

Songtext: https://www.songtexte.com/songtext/santiano/es-gibt-nur-wasser-5b85230c.html

When dealing with direct objects and the accusative case, it's good to know when to use a definite article or not. Often, in English, we don't use a definite article.

I like to eat pizza.
There's fruit here.

Notice that you don't see the definite article "the" in these sentences. We aren't talking about a specific pizza or specific fruit, so we leave it out. If you had been talking about a specific item, the sentences would have been

I like to eat the pizza. (specific pizza)
There's the fruit here. (specific fruit)

If you normally wouldn't use "the" in English, you probably won't need der/die/das in German and vice versa.

Ich esse gern Pizza.

Es gibt Obst hier.

If you wanted to say that you're eating a specific pizza or fruit, you would add the definite article.

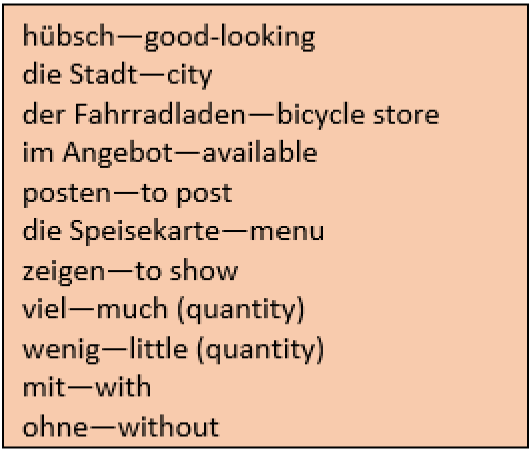
Ich esse gern die Pizza.	I like to eat THE pizza.
Es gibt das Obst hier.	There's the fruit here.

Use the English that you already know to help distinguish between using a definite article or leaving it out.

QUICK REVIEW: We haven't reviewed verb conjugation in a while, so try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) verb conjugation verb ending quiz to see if you still remember. We'll be conjugating verbs again in the next section of this book.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=536#h5p-77

Ex. O: Video. Nicos Weg: Folge 14: Was trinkst du? Watch episode 14 of Nicos Weg and do the online activities following it.



hübsch—good-looking
die Stadt—city
der Fahrradladen—bicycle store
im Angebot—available
posten—to post
die Speisekarte—menu
zeigen—to show
viel—much (quantity)
wenig—little (quantity)
mit—with
ohne—without

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/was-trinkst-du/l-37279418.

19. Section 2-4

2.4: Stem-changing verbs

You learned in Chapter 1 how to conjugate *sein*, *haben*, and regular verbs. Although *sein* and *haben* are irregular and must be memorized, regular verbs have the same endings. Here they are below as a review.

ich→-e	wir→-en (same as infinitive)
du→ -st	ihr→ -t
er/sie/es→ -t	sie/Sie→ -en (same as infinitive)

Try Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) verb review before moving on.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-78

In Chapter 1, you also learned how to describe the weather with adjectives. To review conjugation of regular verbs, here are a few verbs that you can use to describe the weather.

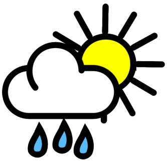
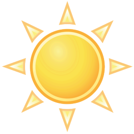
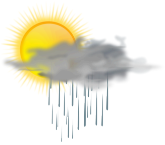
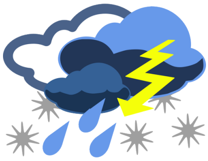
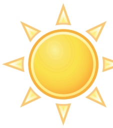
regnen—to rain
schneien—to snow
blitzen—to lightning
stürmen—to storm
scheinen—to shine

die Sonne—sun

Es regnet. (Audio courtesy of Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-1

Ex. A: Wie ist das Wetter? Using the weather verbs above, write several complete sentences for each day of the weather forecast below, including the day. Remember—the verb must always be in second position. As a review, also use the adjectives you learned in Chapter 2.

Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag
				
15° C	24° C	19° C	3° C	12° C

Beispiel: Es regnet am Montag. (Am Montag regnet es.) Es ist wolkig. Wir haben 15 Grad. Es ist kühl…usw.

LISTENING PRACTICE: Listen to the description of the weather and fill in the blanks with the missing words. (Audio used by permission from germanlistening.com.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-117

LISTENING PRACTICE: Listen to Johanna (AudioLingua) describe the weather. This clip is more challenging, but you will hear several weather words and new weather verbs that you just learned. Make notes about what you hear.

- Wetter
- Temperatur
- Jahreszeit (season)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-3

Some verbs in German have a stem change. This means that we will need to change a vowel in the stem as well as putting on the regular endings that you learned in Chapter 1 from the chart on the previous page.

Verb: spielen	
STEM	ENDING
spiel-	–en

For example, the verb *tragen*, to wear, or to carry, is a stem-changing verb that changes its stem from a to ä.

Unser Onkel **trägt** ein T-shirt und eine Jeans.
Du **trägst** einen Pulli in blau.

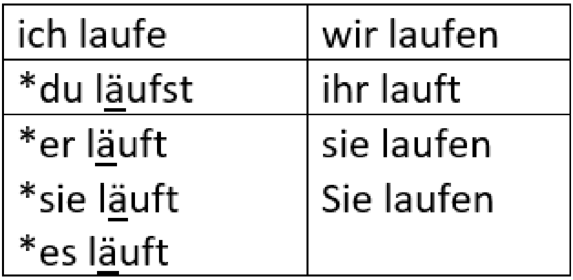
When conjugating, we put on the regular ending –t AND change the vowel in the stem to *ä*.

Rule: Stem-changing verbs **only** change their stems when conjugated for *du* or *er/sie/es*. **All other subjects stay the same**.

Here is a list of verbs that undergo a vowel change from a to ä.

Stem-changing verbs: a→ä
tragen—to wear
fahren—to drive
laufen—to run, walk fast
schlafen—to sleep
halten—to stop, to halt

The conjugation of *laufen*, for example, would look like this.



ich laufe	wir laufen
*du läufst	ihr lauft
*er läuft *sie läuft *es läuft	sie laufen Sie laufen

Notice that ONLY the *du* and *er/sie/es* form change their stems. Everything else stay the same as a regular conjugation.

⇒**PRONUNCIATION of äu**: [äu] makes the same sound as [eu]; it is pronounced similar to the English “oi,” as in “foil” or “boil.”

The other a to ä stem-changing verbs are conjugated similarly.

halten—to halt, to stop	
ich halt**e**	wir halt**en**
*du h**ä**lt**st**	ihr halt**et**
*er/sie/es h**ä**lt	sie/Sie halt**en**

fahren—to drive	
ich fahr**e**	wir fahr**en**
*du f**ä**hr**st**	ihr fahr**t**
*er/sie/es f**ä**hr**t**	sie/Sie fahr**en**

tragen—to wear; to carry	
ich trag**e**	wir trag**en**
*du tr**ä**g**st**	ihr trag**t**
*er/sie/es tr**ä**g**t**	sie/Sie trag**en**

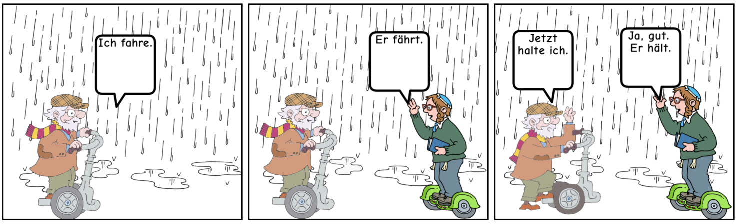
schlafen—to sleep	
ich schlaf**e**	wir schlaf**en**
*du schl**ä**f**st**	ihr schlaf**t**
*er/sie/es schl**ä**ft	sie/Sie schlaf**en**

Listen to the two audio clips to compare the pronunciation of “ich fahre” without an Umlaut to “er fährt” with an Umlaut.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-4

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-5

(Audio courtesy of Wikimedia user Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

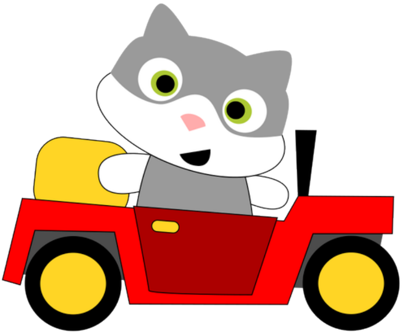

Ich fahre.
Er fährt.
Jetzt halte ich.
Ja, gut. Er hält.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video. Click to see me reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-1

Fahren vs. gehen. The German language is slightly more specific when it comes to driving vs. walking. The verb *gehen*, which you learned in Chapter 1, means "to walk or to go by foot." It would sound strange to describe the following picture as "Die Katze geht."



Die Katze fährt.

Since the car has no feet, it is better to use the verb *fahren.* Use *fahren* with cars, bicycles, and most modes of transportation. Notice the difference in *gehen* and *fahren* in the following exchange between two exchange students and a bus driver. (TRUE STORY!)

- **Studentin 1**: I don't speak German. Ask the bus driver if this bus is going into town.
- **Studentin 2**: Entschuldigung. Geht dieser Bus in die Stadt?
- **Busfahrer**: Nein, leider nicht.
- **Studentin 2**: (Turns to Studentin 1) No, it's not going into town.

- **Busfahrer**: Junge Dame, junge Dame! (Motions to Studentin 2) Dieser Bus *geht* nicht. Er hat keine Füße. Er *fährt*. Und ja, er fährt in die Stadt.

Or Student 2 could have also asked, "Wohin fährt dieser Bus?" (Where is this bus driving/going?) The main point is, that she should have used the stem-changing verb *fahren* instead of *gehen*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-6

(Audio courtesy of Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International).

Video: Watch *Easy German*'s video to see lots of examples using the verb *fahren*. At the 2:20 mark, the video gets into past tense, which we will not do until GR 102, but if you're feeling brave, watch the rest!

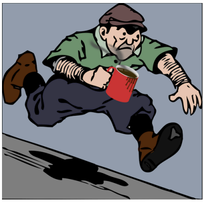
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-2

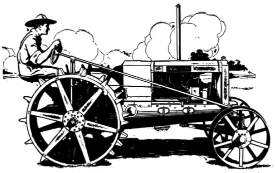
Video. Watch *Easy German*'s video to see lots of examples using the verb gehen.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

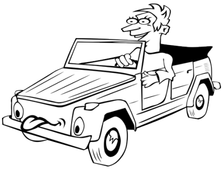
from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-3

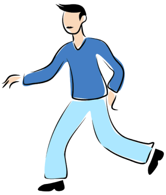
Ex. B: Fahren, gehen, oder laufen? Using the pictures below, decide whether it would be best to use the verb *fahren*, *gehen*, or *laufen* to describe the action. Then write a complete sentence, conjugating the verb for the subject. Remember—*fahren* and *laufen* are stem-changing verbs; *gehen* is not.

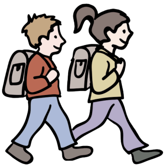
Beispiel:  →Der Mann läuft.

1. 

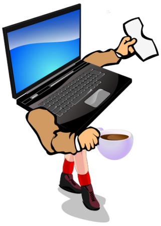
6.



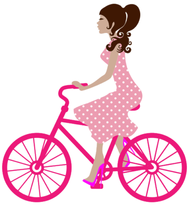
2. 

7. 

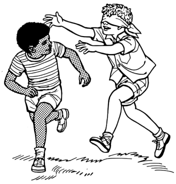
3.



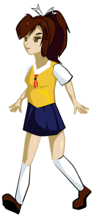
4.



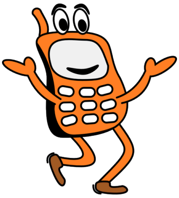
5.



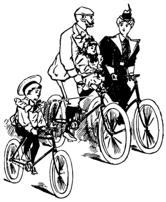
8.



9.



10.

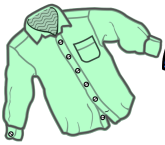


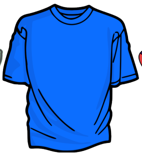
Ex. C: Wie lange schläfst du? With a partner, ask each other the following questions. Then answer in a complete sentence.

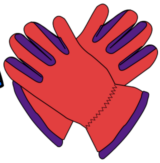
1. Wie lange schläfst du am Montag?
2. Wie lange schläfst du am Wochenende?
3. Wie lange schläfst du im Sommer?
4. Wie lange schläfst du bei der Arbeit?

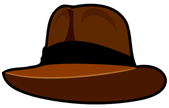
Stunden—hours
Minuten—minutes
Tage—days

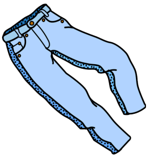
Clothing: Below is a list of clothing that you can use with the verb *tragen* to describe what you are wearing.





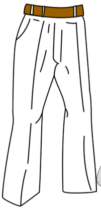


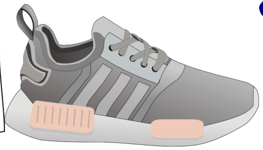


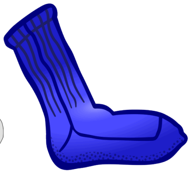


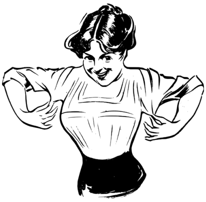
1—das Hemd, -en
2—das T-shirt, -s
3—der Handschuh, -e
4—der Hut, -¨e
5—die Jeans, -

1 2 3 4 5



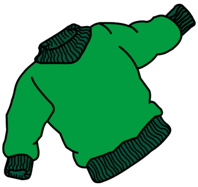


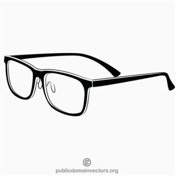


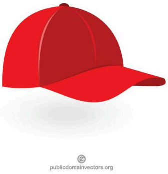


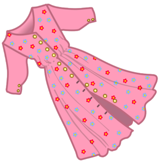
6—die Hose, -n
7—der Schuh, -e
8—die Socke, -n
9—die Bluse, -n

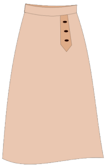
6 7 8 9





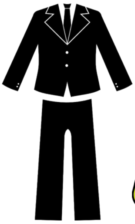


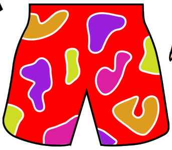


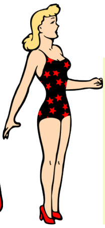


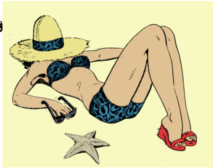
10—der Pullover, -
(der Pulli, -s)
11—die Brille, -n
12—die Mütze, -n
13—das Kleid, -er
14—der Rock, -¨e

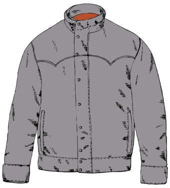
10 11 12 13 14







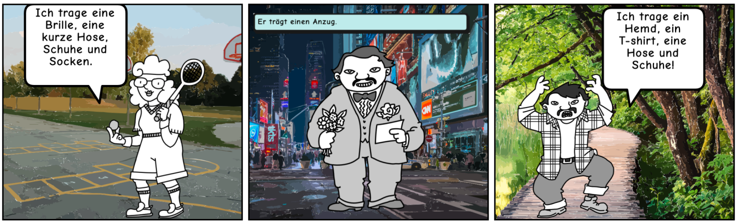




15—der Anzug, -¨e
16—der Badeanzug, -¨e
17—der Badeanzug, -¨e
18—der Bikini, -s
19—die Jacke, -n

15 16 17 18 19

eine kurze Hose—shorts (singular)
Sandalen—sandals
Badelatschen—flipflops
Stiefel—boots
die Sonnenbrille—sunglasses (singular)
Stöckelschuhe—high heels


Ich trage eine Brille, eine kurze Hose, Schuhe und Socken.
Er trägt einen Anzug.
Ich trage ein Hemd, ein T-shirt, eine Hose und Schuhe!

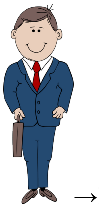
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

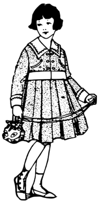
Ex. D: Was trägst du heute? Don't forget to put the articles of clothing that you are wearing in the accusative case. Masculine will get an extra -n. You may need to determine whether the item you are wearing is singular or plural.

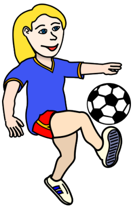
Ich trage heute _________, __________ und __________.

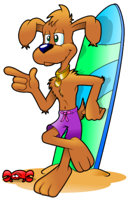
Brandon trägt eine Lederhose, ein Hemd, Socken und Schuhe. Er spielt Tuba.

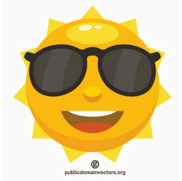
Ex. E: Was tragen diese Leute? Answer using a complete sentence.

Beispiel:  →Er trägt einen Anzug und Schuhe.

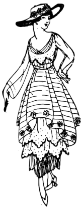
1. 

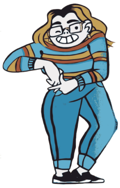
2. 

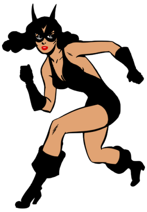
3. 

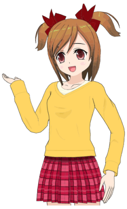
4. 

publicdomainvectors.org

5. 

6. 

7. 

8. 

Extra Practice with Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's exercise (University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-101

Video. Watch Easy German's video to hear clothing vocabulary in super slow German.

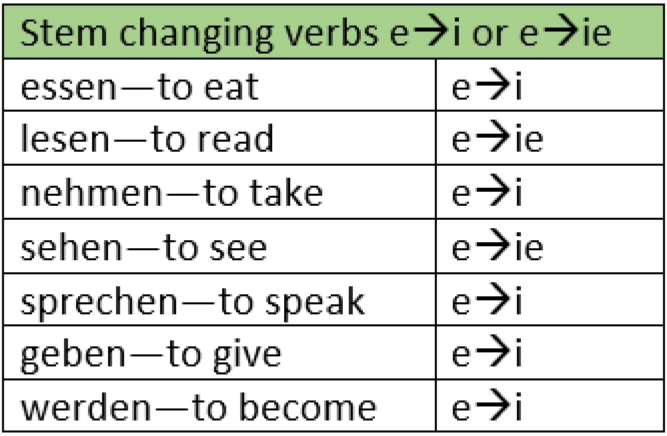
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-4

Ex. F: Was tragen Sie im Frühling? Read each situation and answer the questions about it in complete sentences.

1. Es schneit, und wir haben -3°. Was trägst du?
2. Das Wetter ist windig, und es regnet. Was trägst du?
3. Die Sonne scheint, und wir haben 25°. Was trägst du?
4. Es ist Frühling, und das Wetter ist warm. Was trägst du?
5. Du gehst schwimmen. Was trägst du?
6. Du arbeitest. Was trägst du?
7. Es ist Sommer und sehr heiß. Was trägst du?
8. Es ist November in Alabama. Was trägst du?
9. Es ist April, und du gehst zur Universität. Was trägst du?

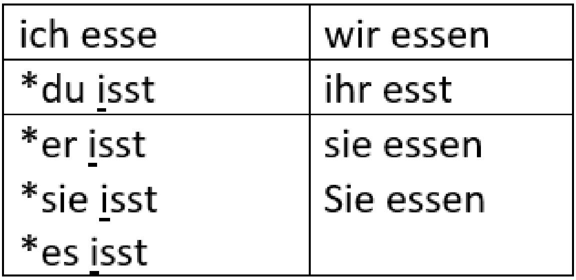
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-40

There is also a set of verbs that have a stem change from "e" to "i"/"ie."



Stem changing verbs e→i or e→ie	
essen—to eat	e→i
lesen—to read	e→ie
nehmen—to take	e→i
sehen—to see	e→ie
sprechen—to speak	e→i
geben—to give	e→i
werden—to become	e→i

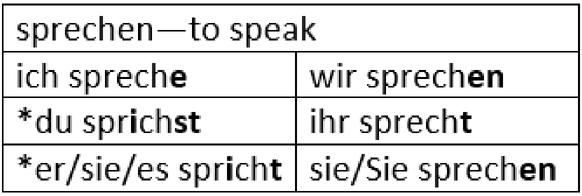
They are conjugated exactly like the stem-changing verbs that changed from "a" to "ä." The conjugation of *essen* is as follows.



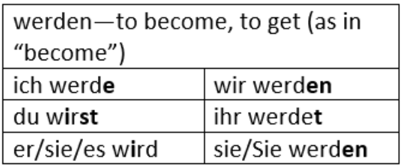
ich esse	wir essen
*du isst	ihr esst
*er isst *sie isst *es isst	sie essen Sie essen

Notice that when conjugating for *du*, (iss + st), we don't end up with *issst*. Limit it to only two of the letter *s*.

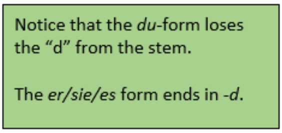
Here are the rest of the *e to i* stem-changing verbs with conjugations.



sprechen—to speak	
ich sprech**e**	wir sprech**en**
*du spr**i**ch**st**	ihr sprech**t**
*er/sie/es spr**i**ch**t**	sie/Sie sprech**en**

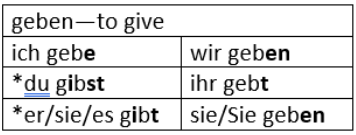


werden—to become, to get (as in "become")	
ich werd**e**	wir werd**en**
du w**irst**	ihr werde**t**
er/sie/es w**i**rd	sie/Sie werd**en**

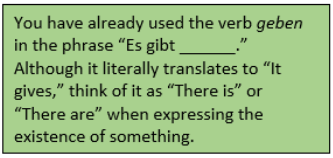


Notice that the *du*-form loses the "d" from the stem.

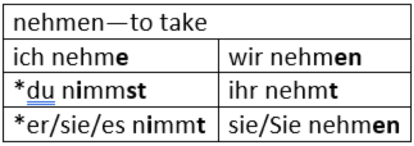
The *er/sie/es* form ends in *-d*.



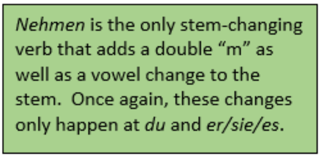
geben—to give	
ich geb**e**	wir geb**en**
*du g**i**b**st**	ihr geb**t**
*er/sie/es g**i**b**t**	sie/Sie geb**en**



You have already used the verb *geben* in the phrase "Es gibt ______."
Although it literally translates to "It gives," think of it as "There is" or "There are" when expressing the existence of something.

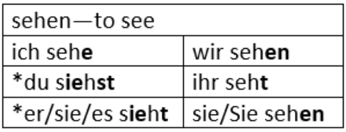


nehmen—to take	
ich nehm**e**	wir nehm**en**
*du n**i**mm**st**	ihr nehm**t**
*er/sie/es n**i**mm**t**	sie/Sie nehm**en**

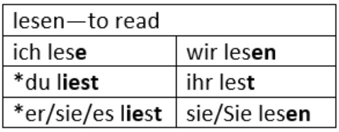


Nehmen is the only stem-changing verb that adds a double "m" as well as a vowel change to the stem. Once again, these changes only happen at *du* and *er/sie/es*.

The verbs *sehen* and *lesen* stem-change from „e" to „ie."



sehen—to see	
ich seh**e**	wir seh**en**
*du s**ie**h**st**	ihr seh**t**
*er/sie/es s**ie**h**t**	sie/Sie seh**en**



lesen—to read	
ich les**e**	wir les**en**
*du l**iest**	ihr les**t**
*er/sie/es l**ie**s**t**	sie/Sie les**en**

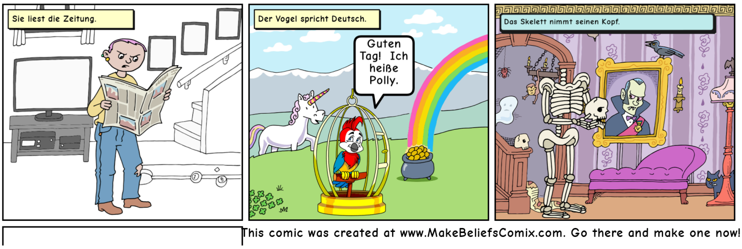
Video. Click to watch me and *Lingoni German* reteaching this.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-5

Check out Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) diagram of more freetime activity examples using the stem-changing verbs you have just learned.

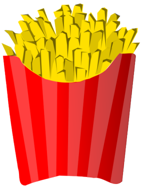
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-95

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-6


Sie liest die Zeitung.
Der Vogel spricht Deutsch.
Guten Tag! Ich heiße Polly.
Das Skelett nimmt seinen Kopf.

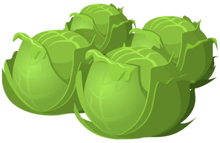
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

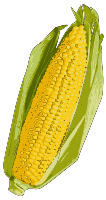
Ex. H: Was isst er gern? Tell what the following people like to eat based on the prompts.

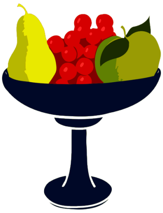
Beispiel: Tobias 

→Tobias isst gern Fritten.

Alternative: (Tobias isst gern Pommes frites.)

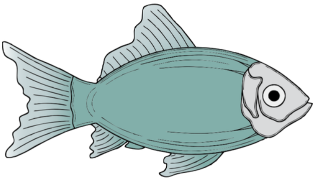
1. du 

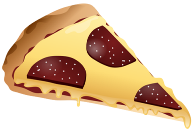
2. unser Vater 



3. wir

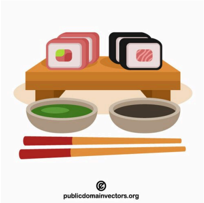
4. ich



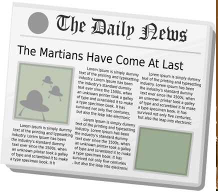


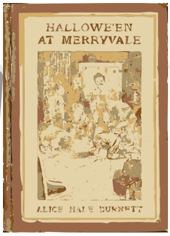
5. ihr

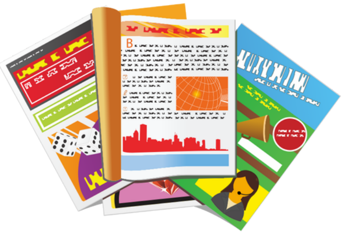
6. der Onkel

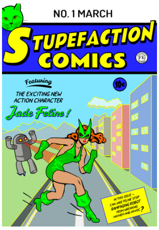

publicdomainvectors.org

LESEN: Here are several things that can be read.

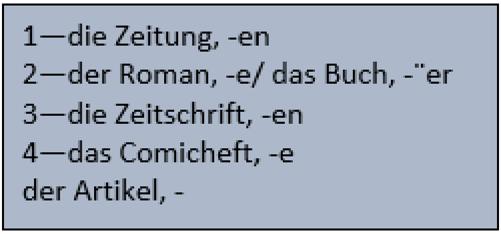

The Daily News
The Martians Have Come At Last


HALLOWE'EN AT MERRYVALE
ALICE HALE BURNETT




NO. 1 MARCH
STUPEFACTION COMICS
Featuring
THE EXCITING NEW ACTION CHARACTER
Jade Feline!

1 2 3 4



1—die Zeitung, -en
2—der Roman, -e/ das Buch, -¨er
3—die Zeitschrift, -en
4—das Comicheft, -e
der Artikel, -

Ex. I: Partnerarbeit. Take turns asking your classmates if they are reading the following items. Answer in complete sentences. Don't forget to put the direct object, **aka the thing being read**, in the accusative case.

A: Liest du __das Buch___?
B: Ja, ich lese das Buch.

If you don't read the thing that you're asked about, negate the sentence by putting *nicht* after the direct object.

B: Nein, ich lese das Buch nicht.

1. die Zeitung
2. der Roman
3. die Zeitschrift
4. das Comicheft
5. der Artikel

Ex. J: Kleiner Absatz. Write a brief paragraph about what your partners from activity I read and don't read.

Beispiel: Kelsey liest die Zeitung nicht, aber sie liest Romane…usw

To say that you prefer to do one thing over another, you can use the word *lieber*.

Ich lese gern *Harry Potter*, aber ich lese **lieber** *Herr der Ringe*.

(I like to read *Harry Potter*, but I **prefer** to read *Lord of the Rings*.)

Ex. K: Was machst du lieber? What do you prefer to do? Answer in complete sentences.

Beispiel: Comichefte/Artikel

A: Liest du lieber Comichefte oder Artikel?

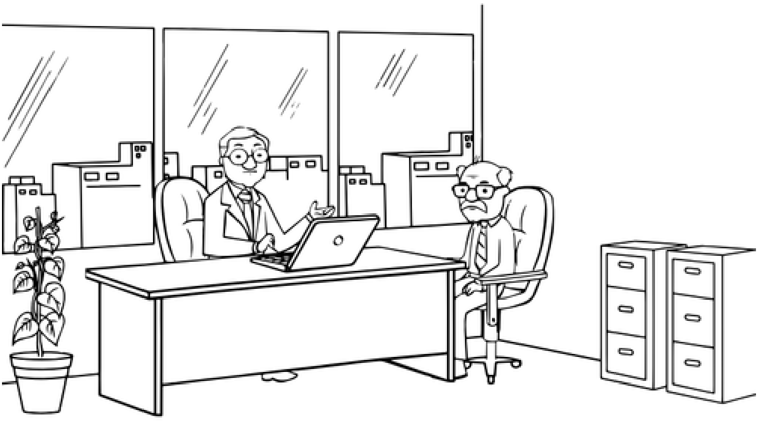
B: Ich lese lieber Comichefte.

1. Artikel/Romane
2. Romane/die Zeitung
3. die Zeitung/Zeitschriften
4. Zeitschriften/Comichefte
5. Bücher/Artikel

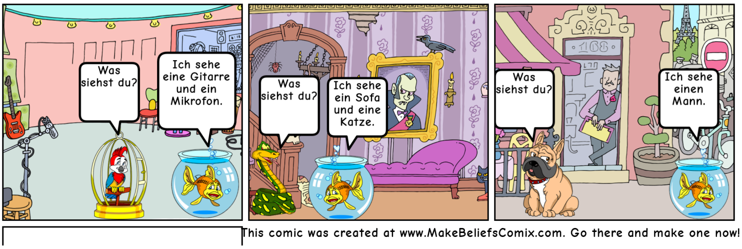
Ex. L: Kleiner Absatz. Compare your answers to Ex. K to those of your partner in a brief paragraph. Use the word *aber* to connect comparing sentences.

Beispiel: Mein Partner/meine Partnerin liest **lieber** Artikel, aber ich lese lieber Comichefte…usw.

Ex. M: Was siehst du auf dem Bild? What do you see in the picture? With a partner, ask each other questions. Don't forget to put the direct object, aka the thing that you see, in the accusative case. If you DON'T see the thing you are asked about, put the appropriate form of *kein* in front of your answer.



A: Siehst du eine Pflanze? (Do you see a plant?)
B: Ja, ich sehe eine Pflanze. (Yes, I see a plant.)
B: Siehst du einen Hund? (Do you see a dog?)
A: Nein, ich sehe keinen Hund. (No, I see no dog.)


Was siehst du?
Ich sehe eine Gitarre und ein Mikrofon.
Was siehst du?
Ich sehe ein Sofa und eine Katze.
168
Was siehst du?
Ich sehe einen Mann.
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. N: Welche Sprachen sprichst du? Which languages do you speak? Ask your classmates about the following languages. If you don't speak the language, put the correct form of *kein* in front of the language. If you speak the language a little, you can add *ein bisschen* to your answer. (Audio courtesy of Galaxy151, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

Beispiel: Englisch
A: Sprichst du Englisch? (Do you speak Englisch?)
B: Ja, ich spreche Englisch. (Yes, I speak Englisch.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#audio-538-7

ODER

B: Ja, ich spreche ein bisschen Englisch. (Yes, I speak a little Englisch.)

ODER

B: Nein, ich spreche kein Englisch. (No, I speak no Englisch.)

1. Chinesisch
2. Spanisch
3. Französisch
4. Japanisch
5. Arabisch
6. Latein
7. Koreanisch
8. Portugesisch
9. Deutsch

JUST FOR FUN: Match the language to the flag. (Courtesy of Dr. Claudia Kost, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-69

Ex. O: Ich spreche Französisch, aber mein Partner spricht

Spanisch. Using what you learned about your classmates in exercise N, write a brief paragraph comparing your own language experience to theirs.

und—and	oder—or	aber—but	denn—because

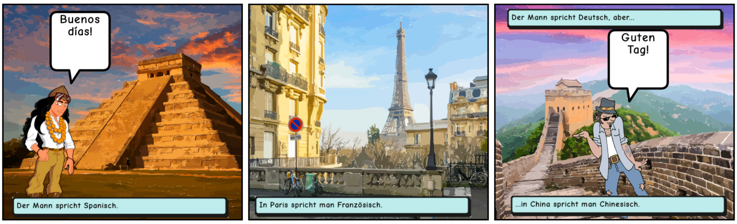
Beispiel: Sarah und ich sprechen Englisch. Ich spreche kein Italienisch, aber Sarah spricht sehr gut Italienisch. Philipp spricht…usw.

Quick Review of Verb Conjugation: Try Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) verb conjugation review so that you don't forget what you've learned so far about verb conjugation.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-76

Man vs. der Mann:

To say that people in general do something, you can use the subject *man*. *Man* is always lowercase unless it comes at the beginning of the sentence. Don't confuse it with the word *der Mann*, which is a specific person. *Man* will always be conjugated like *er/sie/es*.


Buenos días!
Der Mann spricht Spanisch.
In Paris spricht man Französisch.
Der Mann spricht Deutsch, aber…
Guten Tag!
…in China spricht man Chinesisch.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

man—one, you, people, they; talking about a group of people

Beispiel:

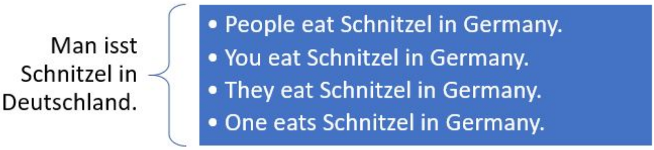
A: Was isst man bei McDonald's?

(What do people/you/one/they eat at McDonald's?)

B: Man isst normalerweise Hamburger und Fritten.

(People/they/one/you normally eat hamburgers and fries.)

Notice that *man* has a lot of translations in English. It's also the equivalent of using English "one" instead of "you" in an essay. In German, *man* doesn't sound odd. It's normal to hear it in everyday life. It's often used to express a generalization about a group of people.



Man isst Schnitzel in Deutschland.

- People eat Schnitzel in Germany.
- You eat Schnitzel in Germany.
- They eat Schnitzel in Germany.
- One eats Schnitzel in Germany.

Video. Click to see me reteaching man vs. der Mann.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-7

Ex. P: Was spricht man in…? Using the pronoun *man* and the stem-changing verb *sprechen*, ask a partner about where these languages are spoken. Don't forget to put the verb in second position!

Beispiel: Italien

A: Was spricht man in Italien?
B: In Italien spricht man Italienisch.

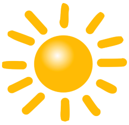
1. Mexiko
2. Saudi-Arabien
3. Kanada
4. Russland
5. Belgien
6. Schweden
7. Japan
8. Brasilien

Ex. Q: Was nimmst du? You are in a restaurant in Germany with several friends. Write a complete sentence, using the stem-changing verb *nehmen*, to say what they are ordering, aka "taking." Don't forget to put the direct object in the accusative case!

Beispiel: Paul/das Schnitzel
→Paul nimmt das Schnitzel.

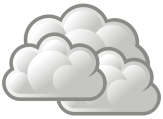
1. ich/die Pizza-Margherita
2. wir/der Käsekuchen
3. Janina/Fritten mit Mayo
4. du/Sushi
5. Frau Frommen/eine Portion Spaghettieis
6. Maria/Rindsrouladen
7. ihr/der Salat
8. Niklas und Mirko/Spargelsuppe

Ex. R: Wie wird das Wetter? Use the cues below to say how the weather is changing.

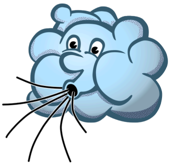
Beispiel: 

→Das Wetter wird sonnig.
(The weather is getting/becoming sunny.)

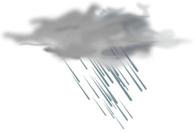
1.



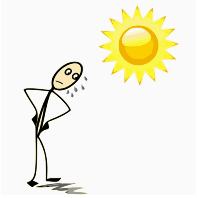
2.



3.



4.



Video. Click to see me reteaching how to conjugate "werden".

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-8

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-41

Video. Watch Learn German's video to review how to conjugate stem-changing verbs.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#oembed-9

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-42

Ex. U: LISTENING PRACTICE: In den Urlaub fahren. Listen to the description of a family's vacation. You will here the stem-changing verbs *fahren*, *schlafen*, *essen*, several food items, and a description of the weather. Fill in the blanks with the missing words. Then answer the comprehension questions about what you heard/read. (Used with permission from germanlistening.com.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-114

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=538#h5p-115

Ex. V: Artikel. Lesen Sie den Artikel und beantworten Sie die Fragen.

Alles über Stefan

Stefan ist sechsundvierzig Jahre alt. Er kommt aus Stuttgart aber er wohnt und arbeitet in Aachen. Er ist nicht sehr modern aber sehr kompetent. Er liest gern *Harry Potter*, *Herr der Ringe* und andere Fantasy-Bücher. Er isst sehr gern Nudeln, Salat und Schnitzel. Er trinkt gern Tee, Mineralwasser und manchmal eine Cola. Stefan sucht immer seine Brille. Es gibt viel in Stefans Haus. Es gibt einen Tisch, ein Sofa, ein Bett, einen Fernseher aber keine Zeitung. Stefan liest keine Zeitung, aber manchmal liest er die Nachrichten im Internet.

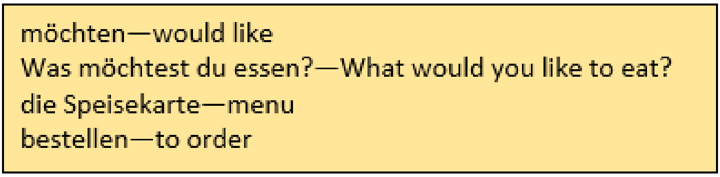
Stefans Familie ist sehr groß. Er hat eine Frau und zwei Kinder. Seine Frau arbeitet als Lehrerin. Seine Kinder heißen Katrin und Erick. Sie sind aktiv, athletisch und super intelligent. Erick studiert in England, und Katrin arbeitet in Boston. Katrin hat ein Haus in Boston. Sie liest sehr gern. Sie liest alles—Fantasy-Bücher, Krimis, Science-Fiction…usw. Sie hat ihren Doktortitel. Erick kocht sehr gern. Er kocht gern Gemüse. Manchmal grillt er Fleisch. Erick hat eine Freundin aber Katrin hat keinen Freund. Sie sagt, sie hat keine Zeit für einen Freund.

Stefan hat auch eine Mutter und einen Vater. Seine Mutter heißt Annika und sein Vater heißt Johann. Stefans Eltern sind sehr alt aber gesund. Stefan hat keine Großmutter und keinen Großvater. Sie sind schon lange tot. Stefan hat auch viele Tanten, Onkel, Cousins und Cousinen, aber er kennt sie alle nicht. Seine Familie ist sehr groß.

1. Wie alt ist Stefan?
2. Was macht Stefan gern?
3. Gibt es eine Zeitung bei Stefan zu Hause?
4. Wie viele Kinder hat Stefan? Wie heißen sie?
5. Warum hat Katrin keinen Freund?
6. Beschreiben Sie Stefans Familie!

Ex. W: Nicos Weg. Episode 15: Eine Pizza bitte! Watch episode 15 of

Nicos Weg and answer the questions online. You will see the stem-changing verbs *nehmen* and *essen.*



möchten—would like
Was möchtest du essen?—What would you like to eat?
die Speisekarte—menu
bestellen—to order

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/eine-pizza-bitte/l-37279261#.

Extra Practice with stem-changing verbs:

- https://www.germanzone.org/stem-changing-verbs-4/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/stem-changing-verbs-3/.

20. Section 2-5

2.5: Accusative Prepositions

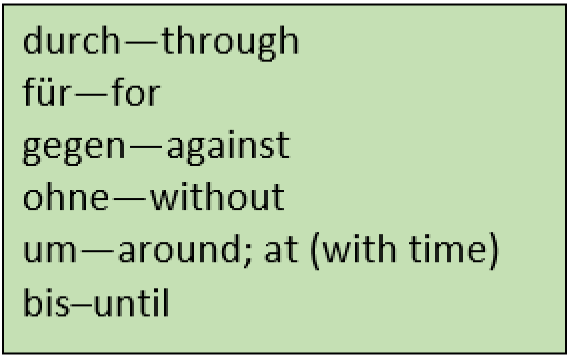
You learned in a previous section that the accusative case is used for direct objects.

Der Professor kauft ein**en** Computer.

(direct object)

To sum it up, we add an extra –*en* to the ending of *ein*-words, *kein*, and possessive adjectives that are **masculine**. The definite article *der* becomes *den*.

The accusative case will also be used after the following prepositions:



durch—through
für—for
gegen—against
ohne—without
um—around; at (with time)
bis–until

Whenever you see one of these, use the accusative case on the noun or pronoun that comes immediately after it.

Beispiele:

- Unser Neffe geht **durch** die Stadt. (through the city)
- Die Geschwister kaufen Gemüse **für** ihre Eltern. (for their parents)
- Die Schwester spielt **gegen** ihren Bruder. (against her brother)
- Ich esse lieber Pommes frites **ohne** Mayo. (without mayonnaise)
- Der Mann fährt **um** die Ecke. (around the corner)

- Tschüss! **Bis** Montag! (until Monday)

Video. Watch Anja's video to see her reteaching accusative prepositions with more examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#oembed-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-120

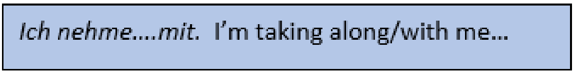
Ex. B: Durch. Beschreiben Sie Ihre Reise! Using a map, tell which cities you will drive through to get to your destination.

Beispiel: Wir sind in Italien und reisen nach Frankreich.
→Wir fahren durch Italien, die Schweiz, und Frankreich.
(We're driving through Italy, Switzerland, and France.)

1. Wir sind in Portugal und reisen nach Belgien.
2. Wir sind in Finnland und reisen nach Litauen.
3. Wir sind in Ungarn und reisen nach Polen.
4. Wir sind in Italien und reisen nach Tschechien.
5. Wir sind in Dänemark und reisen nach Österreich.
6. Wir sind in Spanien und reisen nach Polen.
7. *Wir sind in Deutschland und reisen nach England.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-45

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-46

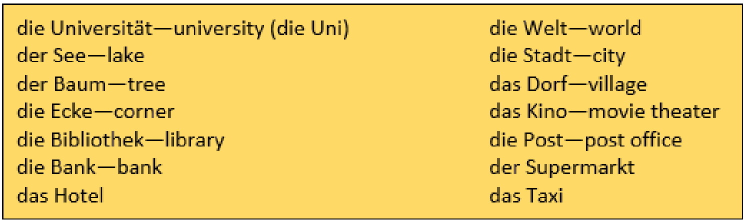


Ich nehme....mit. I'm taking along/with me...

Ex. E: Ohne! Using vocabulary for articles of clothing, describe what you will be traveling **without**; then say what you will take with you instead. Don't forget to put the word after ohne in the accusative case, as well as any direct objects. They are underlined in the example below.

Beispiel: Wir reisen im Sommer nach Florida.
→Ich reise ohne meine Jacke; ich nehme einen Badeanzug mit.

1. Wir reisen im Winter nach Minnesota.
2. Wir reisen im Frühling nach Florida.
3. Wir reisen im Herbst nach Vermont.
4. Wir reisen im Sommer nach Alaska.
5. Wir reisen im Winter nach Hawaii.
6. Wir reisen im Frühling nach Mexiko.
7. Wir reisen im Herbst nach Deutschland.



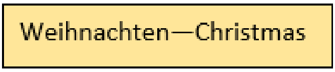
die Universität—university (die Uni)
der See—lake
der Baum—tree
die Ecke—corner
die Bibliothek—library
die Bank—bank
das Hotel
die Welt—world
die Stadt—city
das Dorf—village
das Kino—movie theater
die Post—post office
der Supermarkt
das Taxi

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-47

Ex. G: Bis. Wohin fährt Thomas? Using the schedule below, describe how long Thomas will stay at each location.

Montag	Dienstag	Mittwoch	Donnerstag	Freitag	Samstag	Sonntag
England	Engl.	Engl.	Dänemark	Dän.	Dän.	Dän.
Dän.	Belgien	Belg.	Belg.	Belg.	Irland	Irl.
Irl.	Irl.	Finnland	Finn.	Finn.	Spanien	Span.

Beispiel: England
→Thomas fährt am Montag nach England. Er bleibt bis Mittwoch.



Weihnachten—Christmas

Ex. H: Fill in with the correct form of the word.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-48

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-49

Listen to Johannes Oerding's song, *Wenn du gehst*, 2019, to hear some accusative prepositions.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#oembed-2

Text: https://www.songtexte.com/songtext/johannes-oerding/wenn-du-gehst-g5b8d67e4.html

Listen to Silbermond's song *Gegen* (2012) to hear several examples of the accusative preposition "gegen."

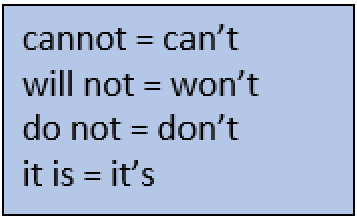
One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#oembed-3

Text: https://genius.com/Silbermond-gegen-lyrics

Contractions with accusative prepositions:

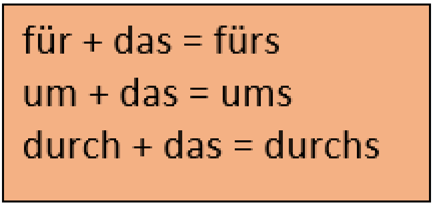
Languages often form contractions, which is a short form of two or more words combined. We do this in English frequently.


cannot = can't
will not = won't
do not = don't
it is = it's

These words can be used either in their long form or their contracted form. Although they are normally used as contractions in English, often we use the long form for emphasis.

I will ***not*** *eat broccoli!* vs *I won't eat broccoli.*

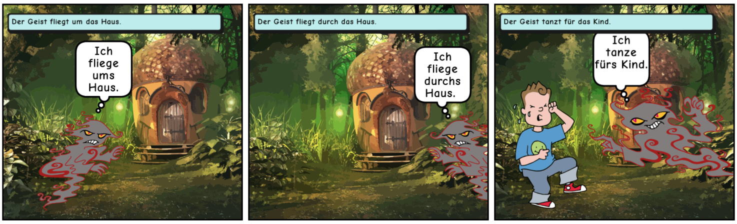
Similarly, in German there are three of the accusative prepositions that form contractions. Just like in English, they can be used without the contracted form to show emphasis, but often they are used as contractions.


für + das = fürs
um + das = ums
durch + das = durchs

Beispiele:

- Wir laufen ums Hotel. (um das Hotel = ums Hotel)
- Sie gehen durchs Dorf. (durch das Dorf = durchs Dorf)

- Du kaufst ein Eis fürs Kind. (für das Kind = fürs Kind)
- Ich tanze ums Taxi. (um das Taxi = ums Taxi)


Der Geist fliegt um das Haus.
Ich fliege ums Haus.
Der Geist fliegt durch das Haus.
Ich fliege durchs Haus.
Der Geist tanzt für das Kind.
Ich tanze fürs Kind.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

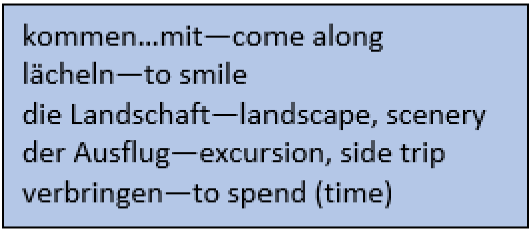
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=540#h5p-121

EXTRA PRACTICE with accusative pronouns:

Go to Germanzone.org's site to practice accusative pronouns and have your answers checked automatically.

- https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-personal-pronouns-1/.
- https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-case-personal-pronouns-2/.

Ex. K: Artikel. Lesen Sie den Artikel und beantworten Sie die Fragen.


kommen…mit—come along
lächeln—to smile
die Landschaft—landscape, scenery
der Ausflug—excursion, side trip
verbringen—to spend (time)

Dillon Falkenberg reist nach Europa. Seine Cousine Tess und sein Vater, Herr Falkenberg, kommen mit.

„Wir starten in Frankreich. Dann fahren wir durch Belgien, Luxemburg, Deutschland, und die Schweiz,“ sagt Herr Falkenberg.

Tess lächelt nicht. „Nein, wir fahren um Luxemburg,“ antwortet sie. „Ich fahre lieber nicht durch Luxemburg.“

„Aber Tess! Was hast du gegen Luxemburg?“ fragt Dillon. „Die Luxemburger sind so freundlich, und die Landschaft ist sehr schön!“

„Wir haben nicht genug Zeit. Wir bleiben nur zwei Wochen in Europa, also bis August,“ sagt Tess.

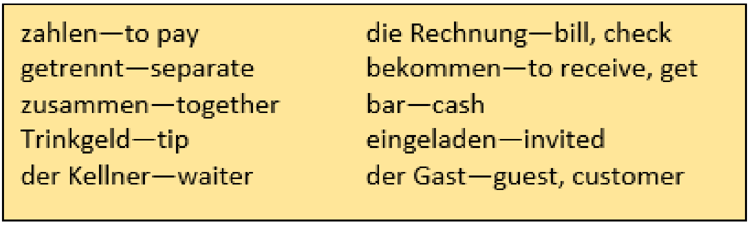
Dillon ist nicht zufrieden. Ohne Luxemburg ist seine Europareise nicht ideal.

„Moment mal!“ sagt Herr Falkenberg. „Es gibt genug Zeit für einen Ausflug nach Luxemburg. Wir fahren kurz mal dahin, essen zu Mittag im Restaurant und fahren weiter nach Deutschland.“

Dillon und Tess finden seine Idee sehr praktisch. Die Familie verbringt eine Stunde im Restaurant in Luxemburg. Dann fährt sie nach Deutschland.

1. Wer reist nach Europa?
2. Wo beginnt die Reise?
3. Was hat Tess gegen eine Reise durch Luxemburg?
4. Was für eine Idee hat Herr Falkenberg?
5. Wie lange bleibt die Familie in Luxemburg?

Ex. L: Nicos Weg. Episode 16: Zahlen bitte! Watch episode 16 of Nicos Weg. Then do the online activities.



zahlen—to pay
getrennt—separate
zusammen—together
Trinkgeld—tip
der Kellner—waiter

die Rechnung—bill, check
bekommen—to receive, get
bar—cash
eingeladen—invited
der Gast—guest, customer

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/zahlen-bitte-/l-37280348.

EXTRA PRACTICE with accusative prepositions. Go to Germanzone.org's site to practice as much as you like with all your answers graded.

- Fill in the blank with the correct preposition: https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-prepositions-2/.
- This one is more advanced. Look up the words if you're not sure what some of them are. https://www.germanzone.org/accusative-prepositions-1/.

21. Section 2-6

2.6: Accusative Personal Pronouns

In Chapter 1, you learned the **nominative case** personal pronouns.

ich—I	wir—we
du—you (familiar)	ihr—you (plural, familiar); y'all
er—he sie—she es—it	sie—they Sie—you (formal)

In this chapter, you will learn the **accusative case** personal pronouns. To better understand the difference between nominative and accusative pronouns, we will compare them to English. In English, we switch between nominative (subject) and accusative (direct object) pronouns all the time without realizing it. For example, we know when to use "I" and when to use "me."

Nominative/subject	Accusative/direct object
I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
we	us
they	them

Here are the German equivalents in the chart below.

ich—mich	wir—uns
du—dich	ihr—euch
er—ihn sie—sie (no change) es—es	sie—sie (no change) Sie—Sie (no change)

The trick is knowing when to use which word. Whenever you want to refer to the subject of a sentence, use the nominative.

Nominative Examples:

Der Pulli hat viele Farben.	(The pullover has many colors).
Er hat viele Farben.	(It has many colors).
Willi und ich brauchen Geld.	(Willi and I need money).
Wir brauchen Geld.	(We need money.)

Accusative Examples:

Timo kennt **Nathan Chen**.	(Timo knows Nathan Chen).
Timo kennt **ihn**.	(Timo knows him.)
Ich sehe **meine Eltern**.	(I see my parents.)

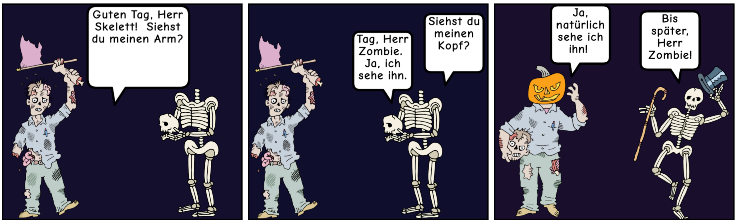
Ich sehe **sie**. (I see them.)

By using both nominative and accusative pronouns, it makes your German sound more natural.

A: Kennst du meinen Cousin?

B: Sebastian? Ja, ich kenne ihn!

Instead of constantly repeating the word "Cousin," we replace it with "ihn" (him).


Guten Tag, Herr Skelett! Siehst du meinen Arm?
Tag, Herr Zombie. Ja, ich sehe ihn.
Siehst du meinen Kopf?
Ja, natürlich sehe ich ihn!
Bis später, Herr Zombie!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video: Watch *Easy German*'s video to see a review of both nominative and accusative personal pronouns.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=544#oembed-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=544#h5p-50

Ex. B: Wen oder was kennst du? You can use the verb *kennen* to say that you know someone or are familiar with a person, city, book, or film. Using the verb kennen and accusative pronouns, answer the following questions with a partner.

Beispiel: Daniel Radcliffe

A: Kennst du Daniel Radcliffe?

B: Ja, ich kenne ihn.

ODER

B: Nein, ich kenne ihn nicht.

(Put *nicht* after the direct object)

1. Madonna
2. Vladimir Putin
3. die Gruppe BTS
4. Helen Hunt
5. Harry Styles
6. Florence, Alabama
7. *Das Boot*
8. Frau Doktor Vance
9. Bettina Matthias

Deutsche Musik: Listen to Blümchen's hit from the 90s, *Er liebt mich*, to hear examples of accusative pronouns in the lyrics.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=544#oembed-2

Songtext: https://genius.com/Blumchen-er-liebt-mich-lyrics

Ex. C: Nicos Weg. Episode 17: Ich war schon in Berlin. Watch the video and do the online activities.

ich war—I was
du warst—you were
wir waren—we were
ihr wart—y'all were
die Sehenswürdigkeit—tourist attraction
nie—never
Alles gut?—Everything okay?
möchten—would like

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/ich-war-schon-in-berlin/l-37325550.

Ex. D: Nicos Weg. Episode 18: Wo liegt das? Watch episode 18 and do the online activities. In this video, you will learn about directions.

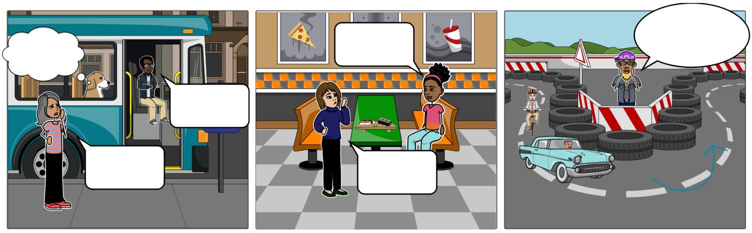
im Norden—in the north
im Süden—in the south
im Westen—in the west
im Osten—in the east
liegen—to lie, be located
von—from, of
gewinnen—to win
in der Mitte—in the middle

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/wo-liegt-das/l-37337877.

Listen to Trio's hit song, Da da da, from the 1980s to hear examples of direct object pronouns:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=544#oembed-3

Ex. E: Sie haben das Wort! Finish each conversation. Don't forget to use at leaset two stem-changing verbs and at least one accusative preposition.



Create your own at Storyboard That

22. Section 2-7

2.7: Future Tense

To talk about things in the future in German, (especially those happening very soon), we can use the present tense with a time expression.

- Ich reise morgen nach Frankreich.
- Nächsten Monat kaufe ich einen neuen Computer.

In section 2.4, you learned the stem-changing verb *werden*, which means "to become" or "to turn (an age)."

werden—to become, to get (as in "become")	
ich werd**e**	wir werd**en**
du w**i**r**st**	ihr werde**t**
er/sie/es w**i**rd	sie/Sie werd**en**

Das Wetter wird kalt. (The weather is getting cold.)

Mein Neffe wird sechzehn. (My nephew is turning 16.)

In German, the verb *werden* is also used as a helping verb to form the future tense. It has the same meaning as English "will."

Beispiel:

*Wir **werden** am Dienstag nach Europa **reisen**.*

(We will on Tuesday to Europa travel.)

Notice that *reisen*, to travel, is at the very end of the sentence and NOT conjugated.

- **Question 1**: Why is *reisen* not conjugated?

- **Answer**: Because *werden*, our helping verb, is conjugated instead. Only the first verb gets conjugated.

- **Question 2**: Why is *reisen* at the end of the sentence? It sounds weird that way.

- **Answer**: *Das ist Deutsch!* To form the future tense, the second verb always gets kicked to the end of the sentence.

- **Comment**: But it sounds like how Yoda from Star Wars talks!

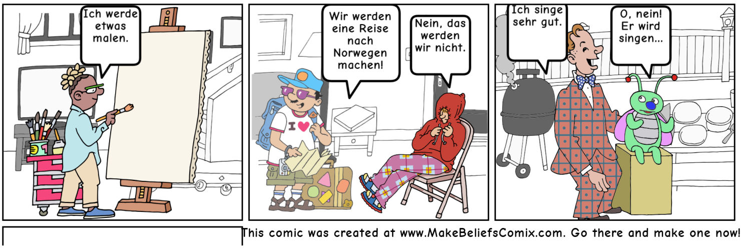
- **Reply**: Yes, it does. Therefore, you will use Yoda as your guide to learn word order in future tense.

Try to annoy your family and friends by attempting a few English sentences with this word order so that you can get the hang of it in German.

- I **will** tomorrow to the movies **go**.
- Ich **werde** morgen ins Kino **gehen**.

- **Will** you me **help**?
- **Wirst** du mir **helfen**?

- He **will** no vegetables **eat**.
- Er **wird** kein Gemüse **essen**.


Ich werde etwas malen.
Wir werden eine Reise nach Norwegen machen!
Nein, das werden wir nicht.
Ich singe sehr gut.
O, nein! Er wird singen...

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#h5p-51

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#h5p-52

Ex. C: Was werden Sie machen? Ask your classmates what they will be doing at the following times? Don't forget to put time before place!

Beispiel: nächsten Sommer
A: Was wirst du nächsten Sommer machen?
B: Ich werde nächsten Sommer nach Florida reisen.

1. am Dienstag
2. um drei Uhr
3. nächste Woche
4. in 10 Tagen
5. im Dezember
6. am Samstag
7. um halb neun
8. nächstes Jahr
9. im Februar

Listen to Wilhelmine's song, A*n all diesen Tagen*, 2022, to hear examples of the verb werden.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#oembed-1

Text: https://genius.com/Wilhelmine-an-all-diesen-tagen-lyrics

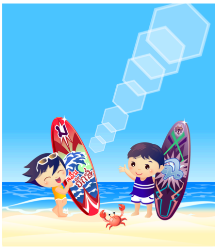
EXTRA PRACTICE with Future Tense: (courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta)

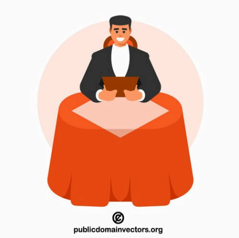
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#h5p-112

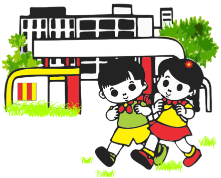
Ex. D: Was werden Sie in zwanzig Jahren machen? Write a brief

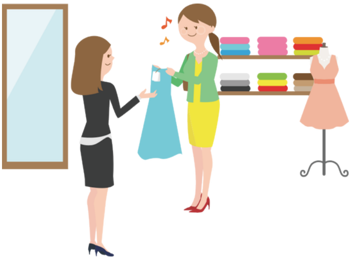
paragraph about your life in twenty years. Where will you be? What will you do?

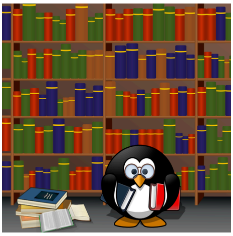
Ex. E: Was werden diese Leute machen? Using the future tense, write a complete sentence to describe what these people will do based on the pictures.

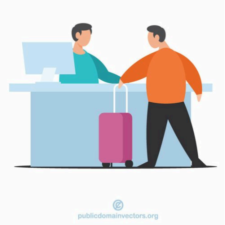
1.


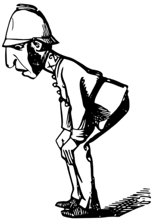
2.

publicdomainvectors.org

3.


4.


5.


6.

publicdomainvectors.org

7.


8.

Video. Click the first link to see me reteaching future tense and the second to watch Ms. Mando's video reteaching future tense.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#oembed-2

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=546#oembed-3

EXTRA PRACTICE WITH FUTURE TENSE:

Click the link to do German.net's extra practice with future tense. You may not know all the words, but just look at the subject in order to conjugate the verb correctly. It will check your answers.

- https://german.net/exercises/tenses/future/.

Ex. F: **Vorstellung.** Lesen Sie den Artikel und beantworten Sie die Fragen. Go to lingua.com's website to read the article and answer the questions online. You can also hear the article read aloud or print a PDF of it.

- https://lingua.com/german/reading/vorstellung/.

Ex. G: Juliana in Deutschland. Lesen Sie den Artikel und beantworten Sie die Fragen on lingua.com's website. This one is a little more challenging, but you should be on the right track with a dictionary at your side.

- https://lingua.com/german/reading/juliana/.

23. Section 2-8

2-8: Oral Proficiency Interview Practice:

Ex. 1: (Time goal—0:45-1:00)

You have just met a new student in your class. Ask at least five questions to get to know the student better. HINT: Watch Ms. Mando's video for tips!

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=584#oembed-1

Ex. 2: (Time goal—1:00-1:15)

You have just made a new friend at your school who wants to know all about you and your family. Tell about your family in as much detail as possible.

Ex. 3: (Time goal—0:30-1:00)

You are an exchange student living with a host family in Germany. The family wants to know about your eating habits. Explain to them what you like and don't like to eat and drink.

Beispiel: Mathilda von AudioLingua.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=584#audio-584-1

Ex. 4: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

You are an exchange student who has accidentally become locked in a classroom at a university in Germany. You don't know the room number but call public safety to describe the room you're in.

Ex. 5: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

You witnessed a bank robbery. Describe the suspect(s) to the police. Don't forget to tell what articles of clothing they were wearing, including their colors.

Ex. 6: (Time goal—1:00-1:30)

Tell as much as possible about your favorite (or least favorite) family member.

Ex. 7: (Time goal—1:00-1:15)

You live in Germany. Your nosy next-door neighbor asks what you will be doing next summer. Tell her, using the future tense

Ex. 8: (Time goal—1:00-1:15)

The same nosy neighbor wants to know what each member of your family will be doing next summer. Once again, use the future tense to tell her.

Ex. 9: (Time goal—0:45-1:00)

Describe your current schedule of classes. At what times do you have which subjects?

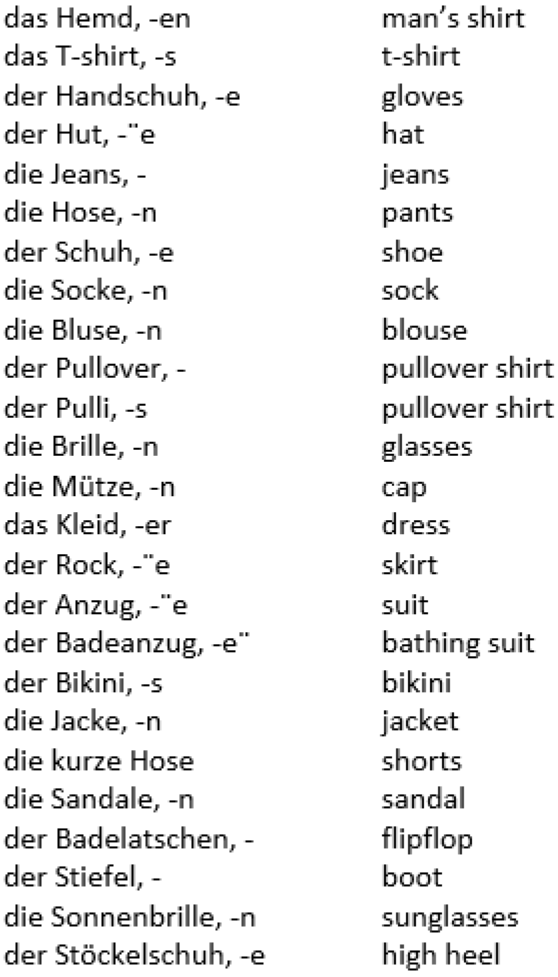
Tips:

- Look back through the chapter to see what you might already know how to say.
- Write/say as much as you can about each topic as it relates to the above scenarios.
- Stick to what you've learned so far; don't worry yet about the grammar topics you haven't learned yet. That will come soon enough!
- Use lots of details. Saying more is always better!

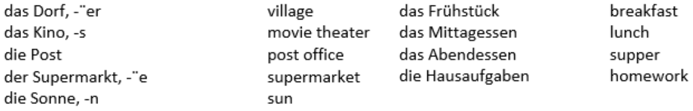
24. Chapter 2 - Glossary

Nouns

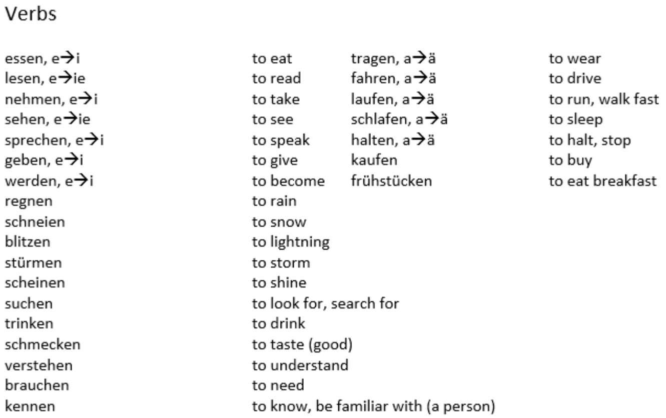
der Cousin, -s	cousin (m.)
die Cousine, -n	cousin (f.)
die Nichte, -n	niece
der Neffe, -n	nephew
der Schwager, -	brother-in-law
die Schwägerin, -nen	sister-in-law
der Enkel, -	grandson
die Enkelin, -nen	granddaughter
das Enkelkind, -er	grandchild
die Eltern (always pl.)	parents
die Geschwister (always pl.)	siblings
die Zeitung, -en	newspaper
der Roman, -e	novel
die Zeitschrift, -en	magazine
das Comicheft, -e	comic book
der Artikel, -e	article
die Universität, -en	university
die Uni, -s	university
der See, -n	lake
der Baum, -¨e	tree
die Bank, -en	bank
die Ecke, -n	corner
die Bibliothek, -en	library
die Welt	world
die Stadt, -¨e	city



das Hemd, -en	man’s shirt
das T-shirt, -s	t-shirt
der Handschuh, -e	gloves
der Hut, -¨e	hat
die Jeans, -	jeans
die Hose, -n	pants
der Schuh, -e	shoe
die Socke, -n	sock
die Bluse, -n	blouse
der Pullover, -	pullover shirt
der Pulli, -s	pullover shirt
die Brille, -n	glasses
die Mütze, -n	cap
das Kleid, -er	dress
der Rock, -¨e	skirt
der Anzug, -¨e	suit
der Badeanzug, -e¨	bathing suit
der Bikini, -s	bikini
die Jacke, -n	jacket
die kurze Hose	shorts
die Sandale, -n	sandal
der Badelatschen, -	flipflop
der Stiefel, -	boot
die Sonnenbrille, -n	sunglasses
der Stöckelschuh, -e	high heel

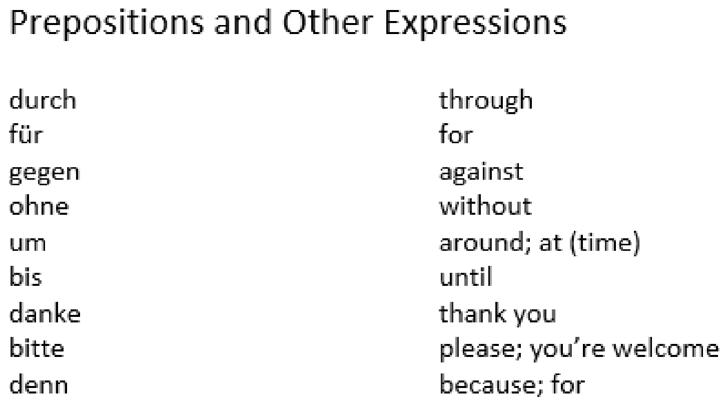


das Dorf, -¨er	village	das Frühstück	breakfast
das Kino, -s	movie theater	das Mittagessen	lunch
die Post	post office	das Abendessen	supper
der Supermarkt, -¨e	supermarket	die Hausaufgaben	homework
die Sonne, -n	sun		



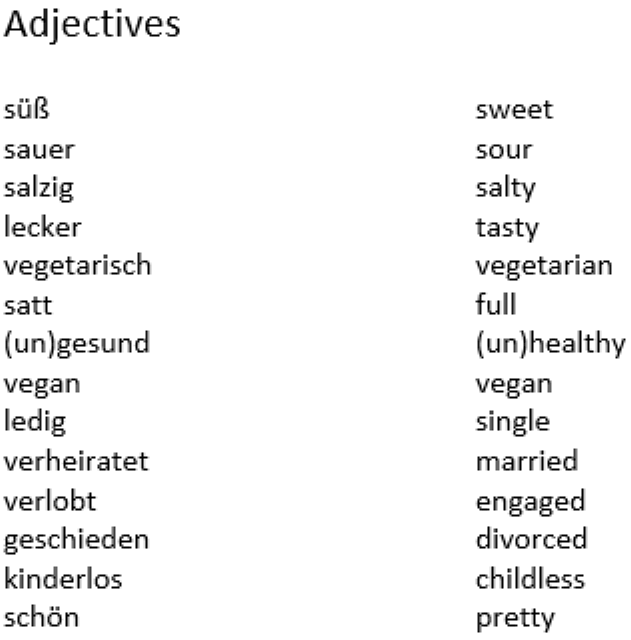
Verbs

essen, e→i	to eat	tragen, a→ä	to wear
lesen, e→ie	to read	fahren, a→ä	to drive
nehmen, e→i	to take	laufen, a→ä	to run, walk fast
sehen, e→ie	to see	schlafen, a→ä	to sleep
sprechen, e→i	to speak	halten, a→ä	to halt, stop
geben, e→i	to give	kaufen	to buy
werden, e→i	to become	frühstücken	to eat breakfast
regnen	to rain		
schneien	to snow		
blitzen	to lightning		
stürmen	to storm		
scheinen	to shine		
suchen	to look for, search for		
trinken	to drink		
schmecken	to taste (good)		
verstehen	to understand		
brauchen	to need		
kennen	to know, be familiar with (a person)		



Prepositions and Other Expressions

durch	through
für	for
gegen	against
ohne	without
um	around; at (time)
bis	until
danke	thank you
bitte	please; you’re welcome
denn	because; for



Adjectives

süß	sweet
sauer	sour
salzig	salty
lecker	tasty
vegetarisch	vegetarian
satt	full
(un)gesund	(un)healthy
vegan	vegan
ledig	single
verheiratet	married
verlobt	engaged
geschieden	divorced
kinderlos	childless
schön	pretty

25. Section 3-1

Kapitel 3

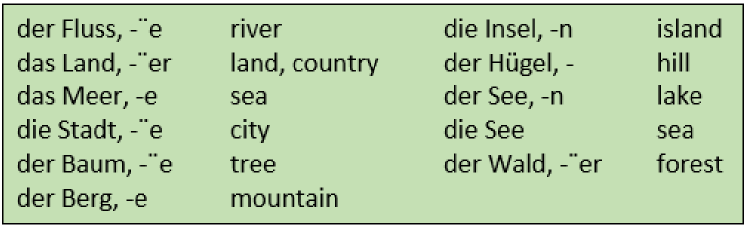
In Chapter 2, you continued your study of verbs by learning about stem-changing verbs. You used the stem-changing verb *geben*, in the expression "es gibt," which means "there is" or "there are."

Es gibt *einen Fluss in Nordalabama.* (There is a river in North Alabama.)
Es gibt *ein Meer im Süden.* (There is a sea in the south.)

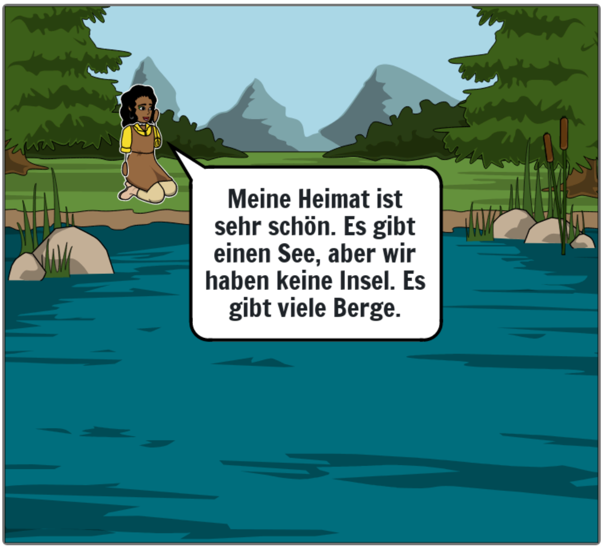
We can also use the verb *haben* to describe what landmarks certain areas have.

Unsere Stadt ***hat*** *einen See.* (Our city has a lake.)
Das Land ***hat*** *viele Hügel.* (The country has many hills.)

Remember! The direct object, the noun that follows the verb, must be in the accusative case! (i.e. masculine adds *–en* to the definite or indefinite article.)



der Fluss, -¨e	river	die Insel, -n	island
das Land, -¨er	land, country	der Hügel, -	hill
das Meer, -e	sea	der See, -n	lake
die Stadt, -¨e	city	die See	sea
der Baum, -¨e	tree	der Wald, -¨er	forest
der Berg, -e	mountain		

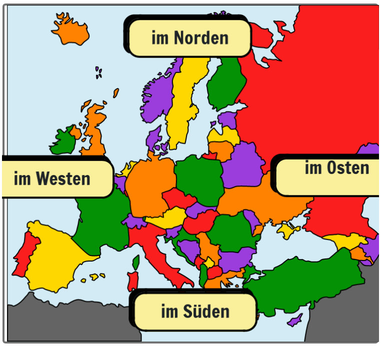

Meine Heimat ist sehr schön. Es gibt einen See, aber wir haben keine Insel. Es gibt viele Berge.

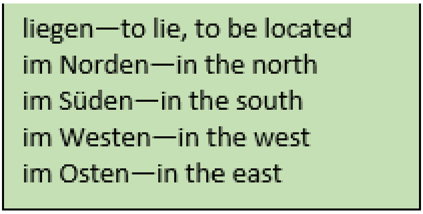
Ex. A: Beschreiben Sie Ihre Heimat! Describe your homeland. What landscape features are there? Use the verb *haben* and the expression *es gibt* to write at least five sentences.

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.

EXTRA PRACTICE with landmarks:

- https://www.germanzone.org/articles-ein-kein-1-geographie/
- https://www.germanzone.org/noun-plural-forms-2-geographie/




liegen—to lie, to be located
im Norden—in the north
im Süden—in the south
im Westen—in the west
im Osten—in the east

Ex. B: Wo liegt...? Using a map of Europe, describe **where** these countries are located.

Beispiel:

A: Wo liegt Spanien?
B: Spanien liegt im Westen von Europa.

1. Finnland
2. Berlin
3. die Nordsee
4. Italien
5. der Rhein
6. die Alpen (plural!)
7. Kreta
8. die Donau

Quick Listening: Listen to Johannes, AudioLingua, talk about Germany. You will hear several new landscape and directional words from this chapter. You won't understand everything, but read the questions and answers first and then listen to the audio again.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#audio-587-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#h5p-132

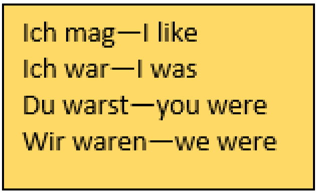
Quick Listening: Listen to Fabian, AudioLingua, talk about the city Stuttgart. You will hear several landscape and directional words from this chapter. You might not understand everything, but listen for key words.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#audio-587-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#h5p-133

Ex. C: Nicos Weg. Episode 19: In Europa. Watch episode 19 of Nicos Weg and do the online activities. You will review word order and the indefinite pronoun "man." Don't forget that German word order can vary as long as the verb comes in second position.

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/in-europa/l-37328492



Ich mag—I like
Ich war—I was
Du warst—you were
Wir waren—we were

- *Man isst Pizza in Italien.*
- *Pizza isst man in Italien.*
- *In Italien isst man Pizza.*

Note–the verb still comes second!

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/in-europa/l-37328492

EXTRA PRACTICE:

Want to test your German knowledge of Geography? Go to germanzone.org's website and to see how much you already know.

- https://www.germanzone.org/europa-und-die-eu/
- https://www.germanzone.org/germany-states/

Ex. D: Nicos Weg. Episode 20: Andere Länder. Watch the video and do the online activities. You will review the stem-changing verb *sprechen*, to speak. Don't forget that its stem changes from "e" to "i" at the *du* and *er/sie/es* forms.

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/andere-l%C3%A4nder/l-37337244

3.1: Imperativ

In this chapter, you will continue using the same verbs you learned in chapters 1 and 2 to make commands. With the imperative, you can tell people to do things.

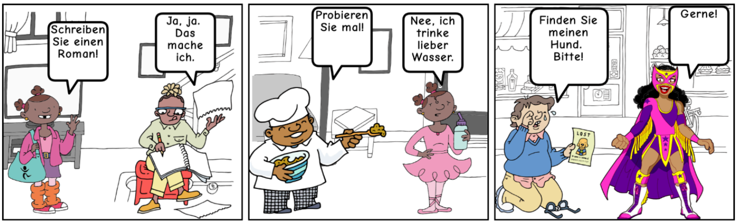
Englische Beispiele:

- Go home!
- Do your homework!
- Drink more water!

In all of these examples, the verb comes first. Similarly, the verb comes first in German commands.

Deutsche Beispiele:

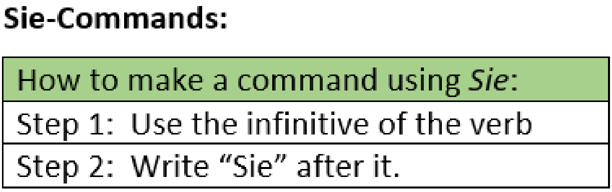
- *Gehen Sie nach Hause!*
- *Machen Sie Ihre Hausaufgaben!*
- *Trinken Sie mehr Wasser!*


Schreiben Sie einen Roman!
Ja, ja. Das mache ich.
Probieren Sie mal!
Nee, ich trinke lieber Wasser.
Finden Sie meinen Hund. Bitte!
LOST
Gerne!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

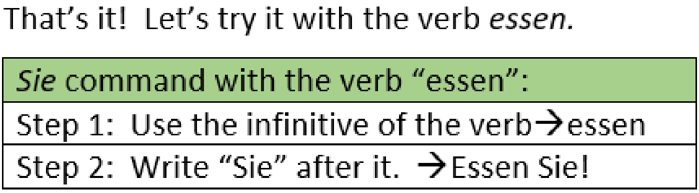
*probieren—to try something (food, a new sport, hobby, etc.)

Because German has different words for "you" that imply different levels of acquaintance, i.e. *du* vs. *Sie* vs. *ihr*, there will be different forms of commands. We will begin with *Sie* commands.



Sie-Commands:

How to make a command using *Sie*:
Step 1: Use the infinitive of the verb
Step 2: Write “Sie” after it.



That’s it! Let’s try it with the verb *essen*.

Sie command with the verb “essen”:
Step 1: Use the infinitive of the verb → essen
Step 2: Write “Sie” after it. → Essen Sie!

The good news is that there is only one verb with an irregular imperative form: *sein–to be.*

Sie imperative for *sein*: **Seien Sie!**

• Seien Sie glücklich!	(Be happy!)
• Seien Sie optimistisch!	(Be optimistic!)
• Seien Sie nicht so pessimistisch!	(Don’t be so pessimistic!)

Video. Click to see me reteaching imperative for “Sie.”

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-1

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

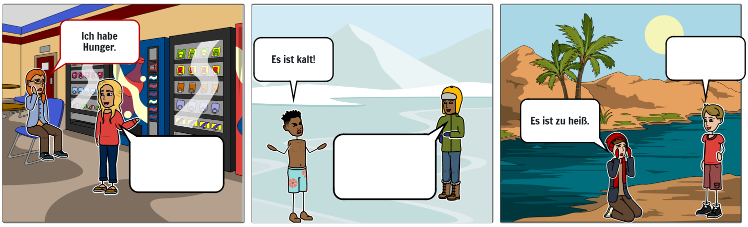
version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#h5p-53

Check out Dr. Claudia Kost's (University of Alberta) matching activity with polite commands:

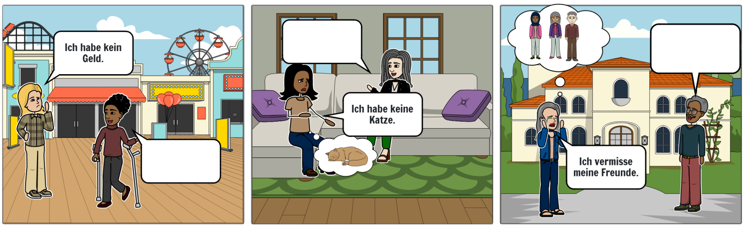
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#h5p-68

Ex. F: Guter Rat. Read the following situations and respond with appropriate advice in the form of a *Sie* command. Bonus: Give more than one command as advice!

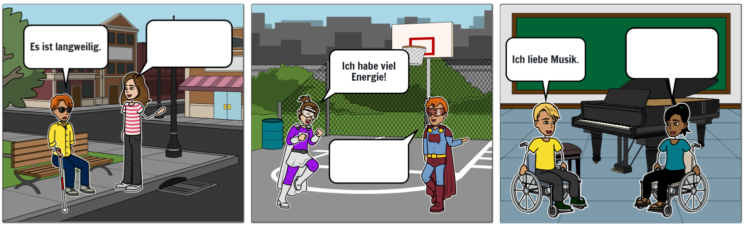
Beispiel: *Ich bin müde.*
→*Schlafen Sie!*


Ich habe Hunger.
Es ist kalt!
Es ist zu heiß.

Create your own at Storyboard That


Ich habe kein Geld.
Ich habe keine Katze.
Ich vermisse meine Freunde.

Create your own at Storyboard That

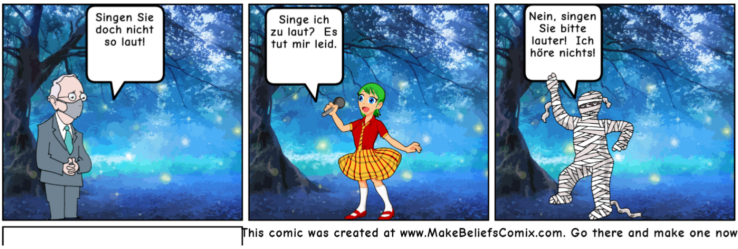

Es ist langweilig.
Ich habe viel Energie!
Ich liebe Musik.

Create your own at Storyboard That

How to soften a command:

Sometimes, a command can sound a little too direct. If you want to soften a command and not sound so authoritarian, you can add the word *doch* or *mal*. *Doch* and *mal* are flavoring particles that can soften a command to make it sound more like a suggestion. As always, you can always add *bitte*, please, to make a command not so direct.

- Trinken Sie doch mehr Wasser!   *(You should) drink more water.*
- Probieren Sie mal den italienischen Kuchen!   *Just try the Italian cake!*
- Gehen Sie bitte ins Bett. Du siehst müde aus.   *Please go to bed. You look tired.*


Singen Sie doch nicht so laut!
Singe ich zu laut? Es tut mir leid.
Nein, singen Sie bitte lauter! Ich höre nichts!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Negative Commands:

In order to make a command negative, all you have to do is negate it with *nicht* or *kein*. In Chapter 1, you learned that to negate adjectives or adverbs, we use the word *nicht* in front of them.

- Ich bin nicht pessimistisch!   (I am not pessimistic!)

To negate direct objects, *nicht* comes after the direct object.

- Ich kaufe den Computer nicht. (I'm not buying the computer.)

To negate a prepositional phrase, *nicht* comes before the preposition.

- Ich bleibe nicht in Spanien. (I'm not staying in Spain.)

To negate indefinite articles, aka forms of the word *ein*–, we add a "k" to make it *kein*-.

- Ich esse keine Schokolade. (I eat no chocolate.)

To negate a command, we will use these same rules.

- Seien Sie nicht so pessimistisch! (Don't be so pessimistic!)
- Kaufen Sie den Computer nicht! (Don't buy the computer!)
- Bleiben Sie nicht in Spanien! (Don't stay in Spain!)
- Essen Sie keine Schokolade! (Don't eat any chocolate!)

To soften these commands, add the flavoring particle *mal*. Flavoring particles have no English equivalent, but they do change the feeling of the command.

- Essen Sie *mal* keine Schokolade! (*Mal* softens the command.)

To try to persuade someone with your command, you can add the flavoring particle *doch*.

- Seien Sie *doch* nicht so pessimistisch! (*Doch* tries to convince!)
- Bleiben Sie *doch* nicht in Spanien!

And, as always, it never hurts to use the word *bitte*, please, in a command.

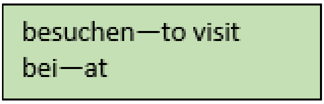
- Kaufen Sie den Computer *bitte* nicht!

Ex. G: Bitte nicht! Using the cues, make negative commands to tell your partner not to do the following things.

Beispiel: sein/faul
→Seien Sie nicht faul!

1. schwimmen/am Montag
2. wohnen/in Tokio
3. tanzen/in der Disco
4. singen/Rap-Musik
5. tragen/Jacke
6. kochen/Suppe
7. lesen/Zeitung
8. fragen/Professor
9. fliegen/nach Russland

Ex. H: Touristen. You have just met a German tourist in your area who wants to know what he should do here. You may want to use some of the landmarks at the beginning of the chapter.


besuchen—to visit
bei—at

- Use the polite imperative (since you're talking to a stranger).
- Use flavoring particles *doch* and *mal*.
- Use both positive and negative commands.

Beispiel: Essen Sie doch bei Ricatonis. Essen Sie nicht bei McDonalds.

Ex. I: Auf Deutsch! Translate the following commands into German, using the Sie-imperative. Add flavoring particles as necessary.

schnell—fast
schneller—faster
laut—loud
lauter—louder
spät—late
später—later
warten—to wait

1. Swim faster!
2. Don't work so long!
3. Ask your professor.
4. Read the newspaper.
5. Speak louder!
6. Don't drive so fast!
7. Don't sleep so late!
8. Stay home today.
9. Wait here.

Wir-Imperativ: Let's __________!

We can also form the imperative with the *wir*-form of the verb. In English, this translates to the "let's" form.

- Let's eat!
- Let's discuss the problem.
- Let's earn some money.

To make this form in German, we put the verb first and THEN the pronoun *wir*.

besprechen—to discuss
verdienen—to earn

- **Essen** wir!
- **Besprechen** wir das Problem.
- **Verdienen** wir Geld.

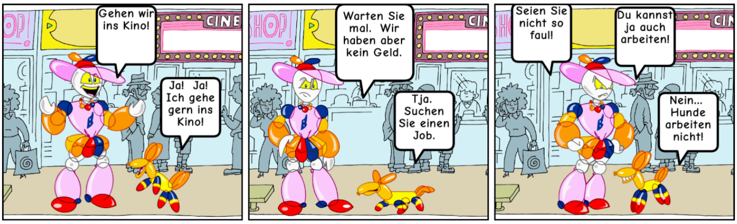
Wir-imperative: INFINITIVE + WIR.

Just like Sie-Commands, there is only one verb that is irregular—*sein.*

- **Seien** wir nicht so kritisch! (Let's not be so critical!)
- **Seien** wir pünktlich. (Let's be punctual.)

Video. Click the link to watch me reteaching "let's" commands.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-2


SHOP!
CINE
Gehen wir ins Kino!
Ja! Ja! Ich gehe gern ins Kino!
Warten Sie mal. Wir haben aber kein Geld.
Tja. Suchen Sie einen Job.
Seien Sie nicht so faul!
Du kannst ja auch arbeiten!
Nein... Hunde arbeiten nicht!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Let's Go…. „Gehen wir _________."

You can combine several verbs together with the verb *gehen*, especially when using the wir-imperative.

Often, you will see verbs listed together with *gehen.*

- schwimmen gehen—to go swimming
- tanzen gehen—to go dancing
- einkaufen gehen—to go shopping

To make a wir-command out of them, we will conjugate the last verb.

- Gehen wir schwimmen! Let's go swimming!

• Gehen wir tanzen!	Let's go dancing!
• Gehen wir einkaufen!	Let's go shopping!

You might see phrases listed like this as well with a noun or prepositional phrase in front and a verb infinitive after it.

- Fußball spielen—to play soccer
- ins Bett gehen—to go to bed
- Musik hören—to listen to music

Make sure to conjugate the verb and put the rest of the phrase after that.

• Die Kinder spielen Fußball.	The children are playing soccer.
• Du gehst ins Bett.	You're going to bed.
• Markus hört Musik.	Markus is listening to music.

Ex. J: Machen wir das! With a partner, take turns suggesting that you do the following activities, using the wir-imperative.

Beispiel: schwimmen gehen

A: Gehen wir schwimmen! (Let's go swimming!)

B: Ja, machen wir das! (Yes, let's do that!)

ODER

B: Nein, lieber nicht. (No, I'd rather not.)

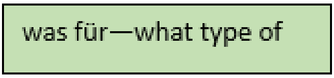
die Landschaft—landscape, scenery
mit—with
der Hai—shark
bestellen—to order

1. Nudeln kochen
2. ins Restaurant gehen
3. Karaoke singen
4. spazieren gehen
5. die Landschaft malen
6. Fotos machen

7. nach Hause laufen
8. mit den Haien surfen
9. eine Pizza bestellen

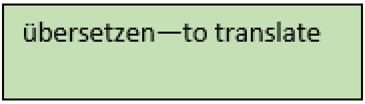
Ex. K: Wir planen eine Party! Sie planen eine Party mit Ihren Freunden. Machen Sie viele Vorschläge mit dem Imperativ.

Beispiel: Bestellen wir Pizza!



was für—what type of

Ex. L: Auf Deutsch! Übersetzen Sie ins Deutsche!



übersetzen—to translate

1. Let's play tennis!
2. Let's work at home today.
3. Let's order chicken and a salad.
4. Let's visit our grandparents.
5. Let's not wait here.
6. Let's go shopping!
7. Let's go jogging.
8. Let's not stay in Europe.
9. Let's be healthy!

Video: We now interrupt this section on the imperative to suggest the following *Easy German* video on gestures in German! The first few are similar to English.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded

from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-3

Ex. M: Video. *Nicos Weg*. Episode 21: Was ist das? Watch episode 21 and do the online activities. You will review how to form plurals, which you learned in Chapter 1.

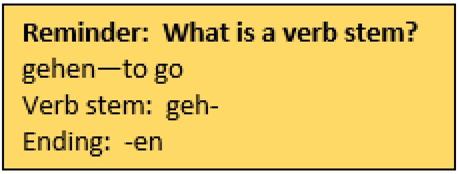
https://learngerman.dw.com/en/was-ist-das/l-37368285

Du Commands:

When giving a command to someone that you know very well and to whom you would normally say "du," you will need to form the commands differently. The good news is that the "du" form of commands is very close to how we form them in English, i.e., with only the verb.

Geh nach Hause!	(Go home!)
Kauf das Brot.	(Buy the bread.)
Halt!	(Stop!)
Schlaf nicht so lange.	(Don't sleep so long.)
Sei doch nicht so spät!	(Don't be so late!)

Notice that we use the verb stem to form the du-command. Just like in English, the verb should come first.



Reminder: What is a verb stem?
gehen—to go
Verb stem: geh-
Ending: -en

Geh nach Hause!	(**geh**-en)
Kauf das Brot.	(**kauf**-en)
Halt!	(**halt**-en)

Schlaf nicht so lange.	(**schlaf**-en)
Sei doch nicht so spät!	(**sei**-n)

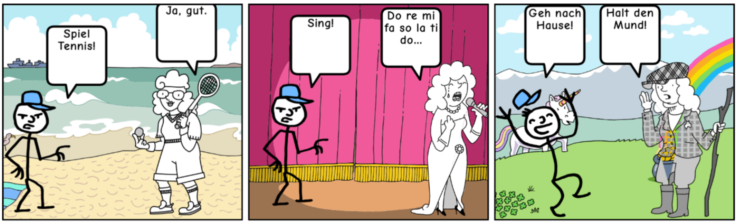
Also notice that, unlike Sie commands, we don't use the word "du."

If the verb stem ends in -d- or -t-, it often adds an "e" to the end of the command.

Arbeit**e**!	(Work!)
Find**e** die Kinder.	(Find the children.)
Wart**e** auf mich!	(Wait for me!)

...HOWEVER, in everyday speech, it sometimes gets dropped.

Wart' auf mich!


Spiel Tennis!
Ja, gut.
Sing!
Do re mi fa so la ti do...
Geh nach Hause!
Halt den Mund!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. N: Mach das! Roleplay: You are a babysitter for a young child. Tell him what to do, using the du-imperative. Don't forget that you can always add the flavoring particles *doch* and *mal*, as well as bitte.

Beispiel: eine Jacke tragen

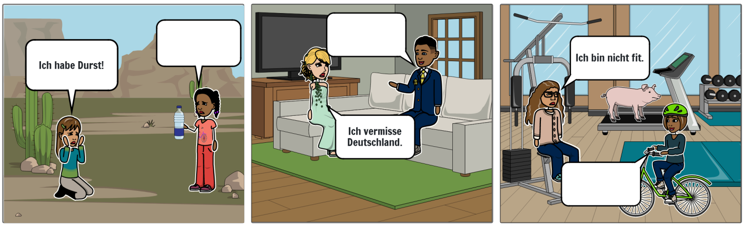
→**Trag** doch eine Jacke!

1. Hausaufgaben machen
2. ins Bett gehen
3. Milch trinken
4. lernen
5. hier bleiben
6. die Katze suchen
7. halten
8. schlafen
9. warten

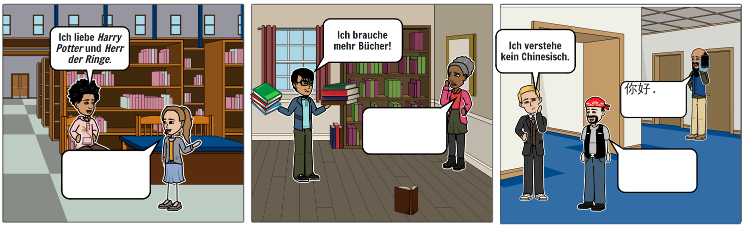
Ex. O: Auf Deutsch! Übersetzen Sie ins Deutsche!

1. Drive home.
2. Don’t sleep so long.
3. Please wait here.
4. Go swimming.
5. Don’t come home so late.
6. Don’t be so lazy.
7. Dance!
8. Cook something.
9. Don’t travel to Cuba.

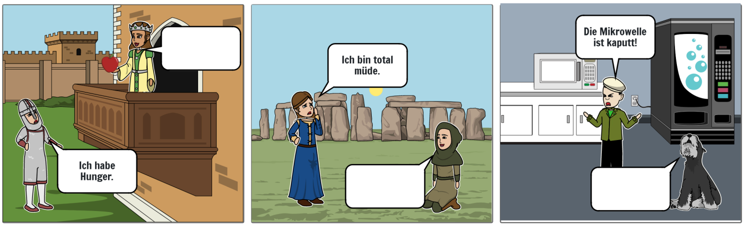
Ex. P: Ich habe ein Problem. Give advice, using the du-imperative.


Ich habe Durst!
Ich vermisse Deutschland.
Ich bin nicht fit.

Create your own at Storyboard That


Ich liebe *Harry Potter* und *Herr der Ringe*.
Ich brauche mehr Bücher!
Ich verstehe kein Chinesisch.
你好 .

Create your own at Storyboard That


Ich habe Hunger.
Ich bin total müde.
Die Mikrowelle ist kaputt!

Create your own at Storyboard That

Listen to Faun’s song *Tanz mir mir*, 2013, to hear some du-commands.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-4

Wilhelmine's song, *Komm wie du bist*, 2020, also has examples of du-imperative in it.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-5

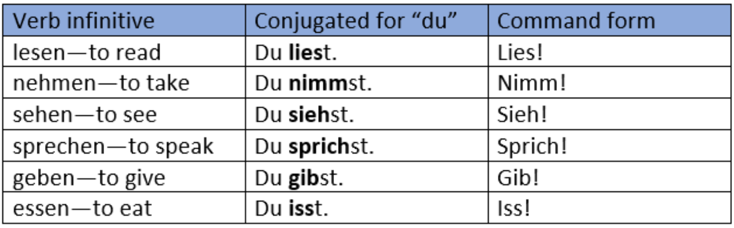
Text: https://genius.com/Wilhelmine-komm-wie-du-bist-lyrics

In Chapter 2, you learned about stem-changing verbs, such as *lesen* and *nehmen*, whose stems change from *e→i* or *ie*. The stems of these verbs also change when conjugated…but only for *du* and *er/sie/es*.

Du **liest** die Zeitung. (e→ie)

Er **nimmt** das Schnitzel mit Pommes frites. (e→i)

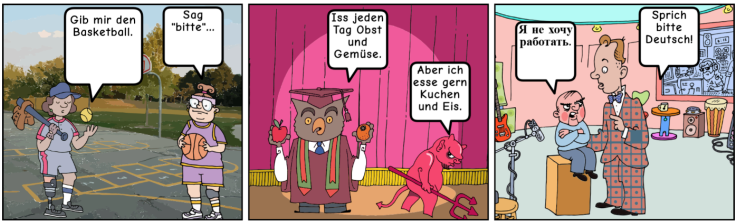
To make an informal command, you will need to keep this stem-change. In the chart below, you can compare the infinitive with the conjugated form and finally the command form.



Verb infinitive	Conjugated for "du"	Command form
lesen—to read	Du **lies**t.	Lies!
nehmen—to take	Du **nimm**st.	Nimm!
sehen—to see	Du **sieh**st.	Sieh!
sprechen—to speak	Du **sprich**st.	Sprich!
geben—to give	Du **gib**st.	Gib!
essen—to eat	Du **iss**t.	Iss!

Lies keine Comichefte. (Don't read any comic books.)

To sum it up, the command should **not** have the –st verb ending on it.


Gib mir den Basketball.
Sag "bitte"...
Iss jeden Tag Obst und Gemüse.
Aber ich esse gern Kuchen und Eis.
Я не хочу работать.
Sprich bitte Deutsch!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

mir—to me

In Chapter 2, you also learned about stem-changing verbs that change from a→ä. The good news is that these verbs **don't change the stem** when forming the du-imperative.

Fahr doch nicht so schnell!	(Don't drive so fast!)
Lauf mal nach Hause.	(Run home.)
Schlaf doch nicht so lange!	(Don't sleep so long!)

Video. Click to watch me reteaching the du-imperative.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-6

Watch YourGermanTeacher's video to see a review of the difference between the du-imperative and Sie-imperative:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-7

Ex. Q: Mach es heute! Your friend says she will do the following things later. Using the informal imperative, tell her to do them today.

Beispiel: Ich koche die Suppe am Freitag.
→Koch die Suppe doch heute!

1. Ich arbeite morgen.
2. Ich gehe am Donnerstag spazieren.
3. Ich lerne für das Quiz nächste Woche.
4. Ich mache meine Hausaufgaben am Sonntag.
5. Ich esse gesund am Wochenende.
6. Ich lese den Roman nächste Woche.
7. Ich gehe am Donnerstag einkaufen.
8. Ich fahre am Mittwoch zu Emma.
9. Ich repariere den Computer nächsten Monat.

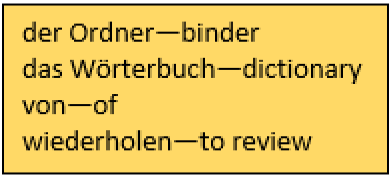
Ex. R: Guter Rat. You meet an incoming freshman who knows nothing about life at UNA. Using the imperative, give him tips on what to do and what NOT to do.

Beispiel:
Lern Deutsch!
Iss nicht bei McDonalds!…usw.

EXTRA PRACTICE with du-commands. (Courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#h5p-107

Ex. S: Video. Nicos Weg. Episode 22: Wem gehört das? Watch episode 22 and do the online activities. You will review indefinite articles and noun plurals, which you learned in Chapter 1.



der Ordner—binder
das Wörterbuch—dictionary
von—of
wiederholen—to review

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/wem-geh%C3%B6rt-das/l-37372077

Ihr Imperative:

To give a command to two or more people who you know very well, i.e. friends, classmates, family, you will form the imperative from the ihr-conjugation of the verb. Just like English, the verb will come first, and the word "ihr" will not be included.

Step 1: Conjugate the verb for "ihr"→*ihr geht*
Step 2: Get rid of the word "ihr"→*geht*
Finished command: *Geht!*

Beispiele:

• **Geht** nach Hause!	(Go home!)
• **Sprecht** doch auf Deutsch.	(Speak in German!)
• **Gebt** mir mal den Salat.	(Give me the salad.)

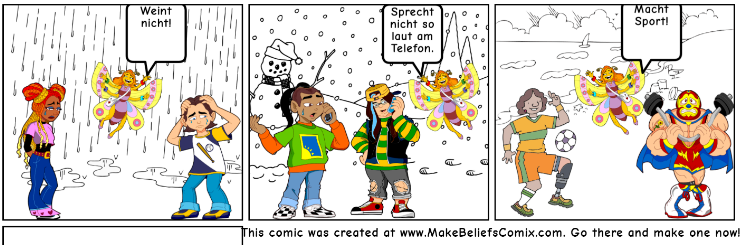
Don't worry about stem-changing verbs; remember—they only stem-change at *du* and *er/sie/es*, NOT *ihr*.

Video. Click to see me reteaching "ihr" commands.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-8

Or watch YourGermanTeacher's video to see him giving lots more examples with ihr-commands. He also reviews Sie-commands for when you need to order around groups of people that you need to treat with respect.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-9


Weint nicht!
Sprecht nicht so laut am Telefon.
Macht Sport!
This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Summary of the Imperative Mood:

	du	**Sie**	**ihr**	**Let's _____.**
How to make the command:	verb stem; keep stem-change of e to i(e) verbs.	infinitive + Sie	verb conjugated for "ihr"	infinitive + wir
Example with verbs *warten* and *sprechen*:	Wart!/Warte! Sprich!	Warten Sie! Sprechen Sie!	Wartet! Sprecht!	Warten wir! Sprechen wir!
Watch out!	Don't include "du" with the command.	Include "Sie" with the command.	Don't include "ihr" with the command.	Include "wir" with the command.
Irregular verb*sein*	Sei!	Seien Sie!	Seid! (not irregular)	Seien wir!

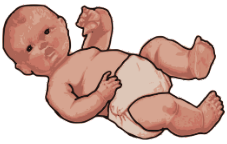
Ex. T: Der Imperativ. Fill in the table with the imperative for each verb.

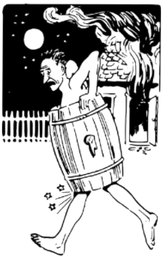
	du	Sie	ihr	wir
1. hören				
2. sagen				
3. schreiben				
4. lernen				
5. arbeiten				
6. fliegen				
7. tragen				
8. fragen				
9. gehen				
10. kommen				
11. spielen				

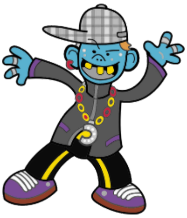
12. machen				
13. sein				
14. wohnen				
15. brauchen				
16. werden				
17. lesen				
18. haben				
19. nehmen				
20. sehen				
21. sprechen				
22. finden				

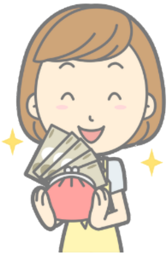
23. laufen				
24. schlafen				
25. geben				
26. trinken				
27. suchen				
28. bleiben				
29. essen				

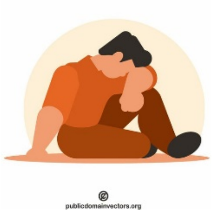
Ex. U: Guter Rat. The people below have problems. Give them advice on how to solve their problems by using commands, aka Imperativ! (You'll have to decide if the command should be formal or informal).

1.  Baby: "Ich bin müde!"

2.  Herr Lehmann: “Ich habe keine Klamotten!”

3.  ein Freund: “Ich habe viel Energie!”

4.  Ihre Schwester: “Ich habe viel Geld!”

5. 

Ihr Nachbar: “Ich vermisse meine Freunde!”

Video. Watch *Easy German*’s video for a review of all imperative forms and many examples used in real life.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=587#oembed-10

EXTRA PRACTICE:

Go to Germanzone.org's website to do some extra practice with the imperative.

https://www.germanzone.org/imperative-mood-1/

26. Section 3-2

3.2: The Twenty-Four-Hour Clock

In Chapter 2, you learned how to tell time informally, i.e. among friends and family.

Es ist zehn vor neun.	It is ten before/until nine.
Es ist halb drei.	It is two thirty.
Es ist elf nach sieben.	It is eleven after seven.

However, in German-speaking countries, you will often see time written out in the twenty-four-hour clock. You will see official time on TV schedules, flights, movie times, train schedules, etc. German does not use am and pm as in English. Instead, it continues counting the hour after 12 noon to show that the time is pm.

To tell time on the twenty-four-hour clock, read the time out from left to right. When you come to the colon, replace it with the word "Uhr."

Beispiel: 8:42 am→ Es ist acht Uhr zweiundvierzig.

If the time is pm, add twelve to the hour.
Beispiel: 3 pm
Step 1: 3 + 12 = 15
Result: Es ist fünfzehn Uhr.

(Audio courtesy of Jeuwre, Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 4.0 International.)

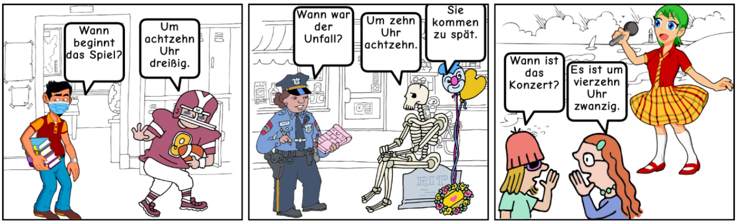
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=589#audio-589-1

Beispiel: 4:25 pm
Step 1: 4 + 12 = 16
Step 2: 16:25
Result: Es ist sechzehn Uhr fünfundzwanzig.

Question: What if it's midnight? Is that zero o'clock?

Answer: Yes!

Beispiel: 0:00 → Es ist null Uhr.
Beispiel: 0:17 → Es ist null Uhr siebzehn.


Wann beginnt das Spiel?
Um achtzehn Uhr dreißig.
Wann war der Unfall?
Um zehn Uhr achtzehn.
Sie kommen zu spät.
RIP
Wann ist das Konzert?
Es ist um vierzehn Uhr zwanzig.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Video. To see a review of official time, watch Learn German's video.

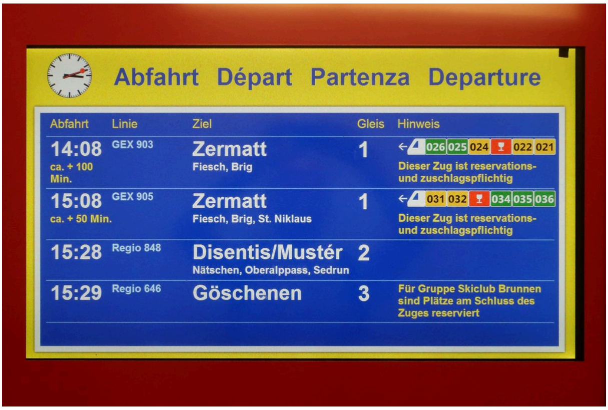
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=589#oembed-1

Video. To see a review of unofficial time, which you learned in Chapter 2, watch this Learn German video.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=589#h5p-54

"Tatort" ist seit 1970 eine der beliebtesten Kriminalfilm-Reihen in Deutschland.

Ex. B: Um wieviel Uhr fährt der Zug nach…? Using the train schedule below, answer the following questions in official time.



Abfahrt Départ Partenza Departure

Abfahrt	Linie	Ziel	Gleis	Hinweis
14:08 ca. + 100 Min.	GEX 903	Zermatt Fiesch, Brig	1	← 026 025 024 🍷 022 021 Dieser Zug ist reservations- und zuschlagspflichtig
15:08 ca. + 50 Min.	GEX 905	Zermatt Fiesch, Brig, St. Niklaus	1	← 031 032 🍷 034 035 036 Dieser Zug ist reservations- und zuschlagspflichtig
15:28	Regio 848	Disentis/Mustér Nätschen, Oberalppass, Sedrun	2	
15:29	Regio 646	Göschenen	3	Für Gruppe Skiclub Brunnen sind Plätze am Schluss des Zuges reserviert

"Andermatt – Glacier Express Out of Time" by Kecko is marked with CC BY 2.0.

1. Um wieviel Uhr fährt der Zug nach Zermatt?
2. Um wieviel Uhr fährt der Zug nach Göschenen?
3. Um wieviel Uhr fährt der Zug nach Disentis?

Extra Practice: Do Dr. Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's (University of Alberta) listening activity on time. You will hear both formal and informal times read aloud.

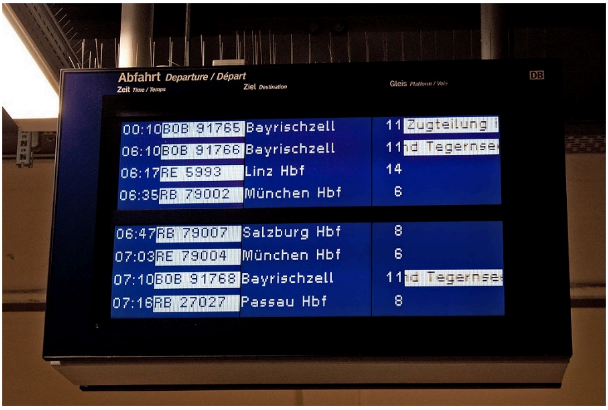
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=589#h5p-87

Ex. C: Parnerarbeit. With a partner, ask each other when the trains depart.

Beispiel: München

A: Wann fährt der Zug nach München?

B: Er fährt um sechs Uhr fünfunddreißig nach München.



Abfahrt Departure / Départ

DB

Zeit Time / Temps		Ziel Destination	Gleis Platform / Voie	
00:10	BOB 91765	Bayrischzell	11	Zugteilung i
06:10	BOB 91766	Bayrischzell	11	d Tegernse
06:17	RE 5993	Linz Hbf	14	
06:35	RB 79002	München Hbf	6	
06:47	RB 79007	Salzburg Hbf	8	
07:03	RE 79004	München Hbf	6	
07:10	BOB 91768	Bayrischzell	11	d Tegernse
07:16	RB 27027	Passau Hbf	8	

"Blutdruck wieder senken: Die Abfahrt der »letzten« ist erst um 0:30 Uhr" by Tramgeschichten is marked with CC BY-NC-ND 2.0.

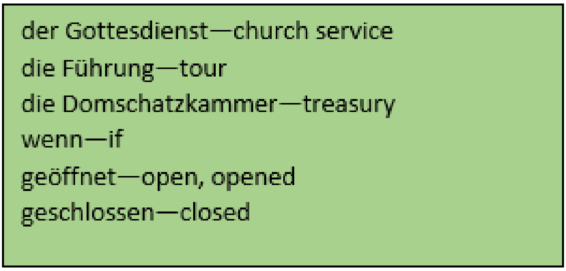
- Bayrischzell
- Passau
- Salzburg
- Linz

Ex. D: Touristen! Sie sind Tourist/Touristin in Aachen und besuchen den Aachener Dom. Beantworten Sie die Fragen.

Gottesdienst: jeden Tag, 7:00 und 10:00

Führungen: Montag-Donnerstag 14:00; Freitag-Samstag 11:00-17:00

Domschatzkammer: Samstag-Sonntag 10:00-17:00



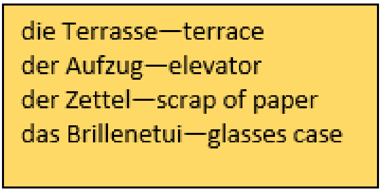
der Gottesdienst—church service
die Führung—tour
die Domschatzkammer—treasury
wenn—if
geöffnet—open, opened
geschlossen—closed

"Nordfassade Aachener Dom – Katschhof – Altstadt Aachen – Nordrhein-Westfalen – Deutschland" by Frans Berkelaar is marked with CC BY-SA 2.0.

1. Gibt es einen Gottesdienst am Mittwoch? Wenn ja, um wieviel Uhr?
2. Wann gibt es Führungen am Samstag?

3. Um wieviel Uhr ist der Gottesdienst im Aachener Dom?
4. Ist die Domschatzkammer am Donnerstag geöffnet? Wenn ja, um wieviel Uhr?
5. Wann ist die Domschatzkammer geschlossen?
6. Wann gibt es Führungen am Dienstag?
7. Wann gibt es einen Gottesdienst am Freitag?

Ex. E: Video. Nicos Weg. Episode 23: *Ich habe kein…* Watch episode 23 and do the online activities. You will review *kein*, which you learned in chapter 1, as well as the accusative case.



die Terrasse—terrace
der Aufzug—elevator
der Zettel—scrap of paper
das Brillenetui—glasses case

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/ich-habe-kein/l-37382992

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's website for extra practice with official time. As always, the site will grade your answers.

- https://www.germanzone.org/telling-time-4-official-time/
- https://www.germanzone.org/telling-time-3-official-time/

The following Germanzone.org exercises combine both official and colloquial time (which you learned in Chapter 2.)

- https://www.germanzone.org/telling-time-5/
- https://www.germanzone.org/time-telling-time-6-wie-viel-uhr-ist-es/

27. Section 3-3

3-3: Der-words vs. ein-words

In Chapter 1, you learned how to distinguish between the definite article (der/die/das) and the indefinite article (ein/eine).

Masculine: der Pulli→ein Pulli
Feminine: die Bluse→eine Bluse
Neuter: das T-shirt→ein T-shirt

Note that neither masculine nor neuter add any endings for ein-words. This also applies to possessive adjectives.

Masculine: der Bikini→ihr Bikini (no ending)
Feminine: die Mütze→seine Mütze (adds –*e*)
Neuter: das Hemd→mein Hemd (no ending)
Plural: die Schuhe→deine Schuhe (adds –*e*)

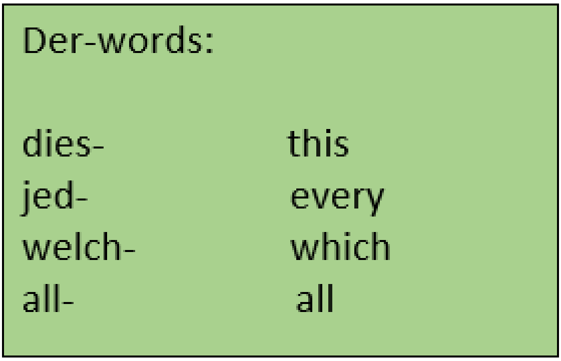
In Chapter 2, you continued by adding the accusative case definite and indefinite endings.

> Review: The accusative case is used for direct objects. The only thing that changes is masculine, which adds an extra –*en* to the definite or indefinite article.

Masculine: Ich habe **einen** Cousin.
Feminine: Wir besuchen **unsere** Nichte.
Neuter: Er kennt **mein** Kind.
Plural: Die Arbeiter produzieren **die** Sandalen.

You have learned all of the ein-words so far, i.e., words that have the same pattern of endings as “ein/eine.”

⇒NEU: There are a few more words that follow the same pattern as the definite article (der/die/das/den). They are listed below with a dash after them to show where the new ending will go.



Der-words:

dies-	this
jed-	every
welch-	which
all-	all

HOW TO USE THESE DER-WORDS:

- Look at the definite article. Ex. ***der*** *See* (**the** lake)
- Put the letters you see at the end of it on the new *der*-word.
- ***dieser*** *See* (**this** lake)

Examples with *dies*– in the nominative case:

Masculine: d**er** Anzug→dies**er** Anzug (this suit)
Feminine: di**e** Jacke→dies**e** Jacke (this jacket)
Neuter: da**s** Kleid→diese**s** Kleid (this dress)
Plural: di**e** Kleider→dies**e** Kleider (these dresses)

Examples with *jed*– in the nominative case:

Masculine: de**r** Baum→jed**er** Baum (every tree)
Feminine: di**e** Universität→jed**e** Universität (every university)
Neuter: da**s** Dorf→jede**s** Dorf (every village)

Examples with *welch*– in the nominative case:

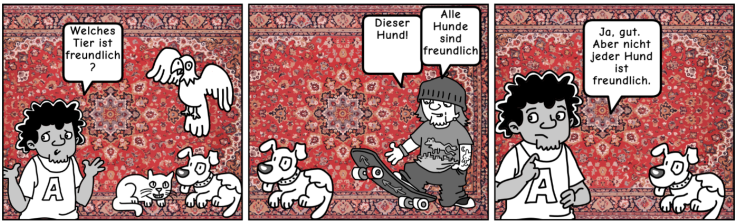
Masculine: d**er** Hut→welch**er** Hut (which hat)
Feminine: di**e** Jeans→welch**e** Jeans (which jeans)
Neuter: da**s** Kino→welche**s** Kino (which movie theater)
Plural: di**e** Zeitungen→welch**e** Zeitungen (which newspapers)

In short, *dies-*, *jed-*, *welch-*, and *all-* will have the exact same ending as whatever der/die/das/den has.

HOWEVER…*all-* will usually be plural.

Beispiel: **Alle** Studenten haben Hausaufgaben.

WHY? Because it would sound really strange to say, "*All Student* have homework."


Welches Tier ist freundlich?
Dieser Hund!
Alle Hunde sind freundlich
Ja, gut. Aber nicht jeder Hund ist freundlich.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

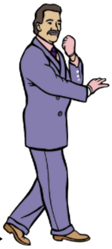
Video. Click to see me reteaching der-words vs. ein-words.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=591#oembed-1

Ex. A: Welcher Anzug ist lila? Using the pictures below, ask a partner several questions.

Beispiel: Pulli, gelb

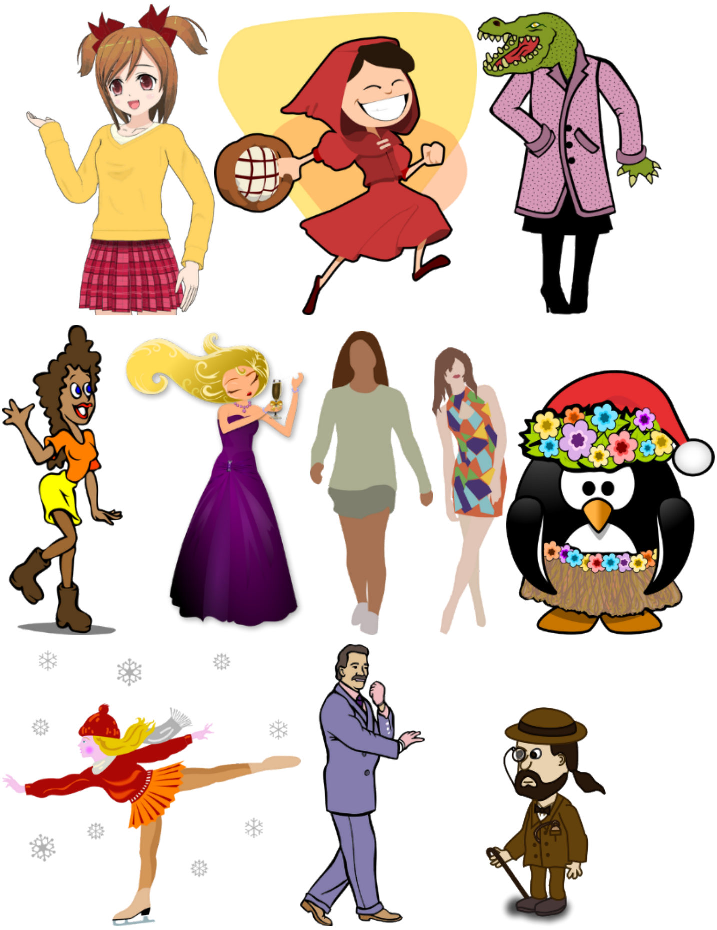
A: Welch**er** Anzug ist lila?



B: Dies**er** Anzug ist lila. →

Adjektive: kurz, lang, neu, alt, bunt, teuer, billig, groß, klein, schick, rot, blau, gelb, grün, schwarz, braun, orange, lila, weiß, rosa…usw.

Kleidung: der Anzug, das Kleid, der Rock, die Schuhe, der Bikini, die Jacke, die Schuhe, die Schlittschuhe, das Hemd, das T-shirt, der Hut, die Jeans, die Hose, die Bluse, der Pullover/der Pulli, die Brille, die Mütze, die Maske…usw.



Ex. B: Welches Buch ist mein Buch? With your classmates, practice switching between *der*-words and *ein*-words by pointing out which items belong to you.

A: Welches Buch ist dein Buch?

B: Dieses Buch ist mein Buch. (Pointing to book.)

When you run out of your own items, swap to classroom items and ask what belongs to us.

A: Welcher Tisch ist unser Tisch?

B: Dieser Tisch ist unser Tisch?

(Yes, I realize this exercise sounds sort of like two toddlers learning to talk, but we have to start simple!)

Ex. C: Welche Studentin studiert Geschichte? Who among your classmates is mentioned in these questions? If more than one student satisfies the answers, feel free to answer in the plural.

Beispiel: Welche Studentin studiert Geschichte?

→Diese Studentin studiert Geschichte. (point to student)

ODER

→Diese Studentinnen studieren Geschichte.

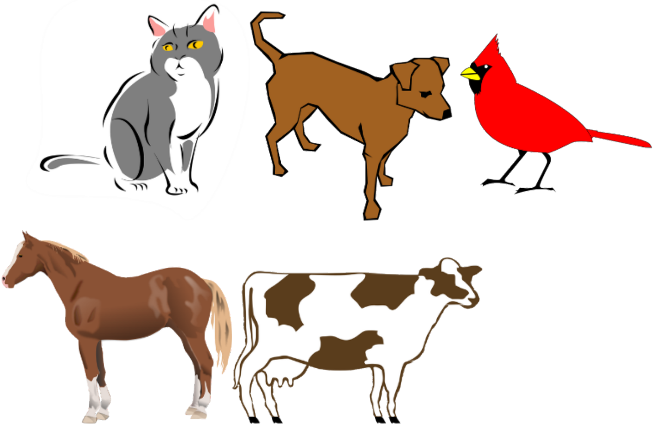
das Gedicht—poem

1. Welcher Student lernt Spanisch?
2. Welcher Student spielt Fußball?
3. Welcher Student spielt gern Videospiele?
4. Welche Studentin singt gern?
5. Welche Studentin schreibt gern Gedichte?
6. Welcher Student liest gern Comichefte?
7. Welcher Student macht gern Hausaufgaben?
8. Welche Studentin wohnt in Amerika?
9. Welcher Student schwimmt nicht gern?
10. Welche Studentin kocht nicht gern?
11. Welcher Student wandert am Wochenende?
12. Welche Studentin arbeitet zu viel?
13. Welcher Student schläft nicht genug?
14. Welcher Student hat heute Deutsch?
15. Welche Studentin macht gern Sport?

Extra Practice: Try Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's der-word activity with instant feedback.

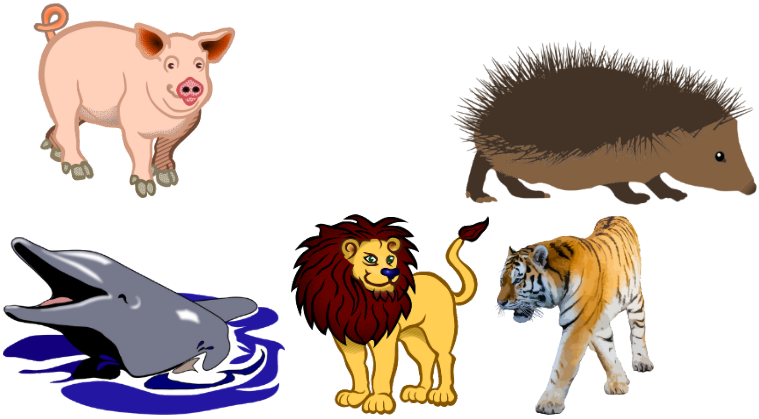
An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=591#h5p-102

Die Tiere



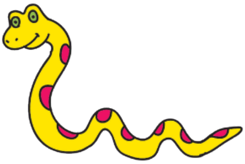
1 2 3 4 5

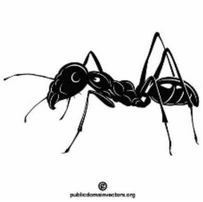
1—die Katze, -n
2—der Hund, -e
3—der Vogel, -¨
4—das Pferd, -e
5—die Kuh, -¨e



6 7 8 9
10

6—das Schwein, -e
7—der Igel, -
8—der Delphin, -e
9—der Löwe, -n
10—der Tiger, -





11—die Schlange, -n
12—die Ameise, -n

11 12

Ex. D: Jede Ameise ist fleißig! Using the animal vocabulary and *jed-/alle*, make generalizations. Feel free to use adjectives, verbs, or any other words you've learned so far. If you disagree with your classmates' answers, argue your point in German!

Beispiel: Ameise

A: **Jede** Ameise ist fleißig. **Jede** Ameise arbeitet.

B: Nein, **alle** Ameisen nerven.

miauen—to meow
bellen—to bark
stachelig—prickly
süß—cute
muhen—to moo
brüllen—to roar
fauchen—to hiss
nerven—to be annoying

1. Igel
2. Hund
3. Katze
4. Pferd
5. Tiger
6. Löwe
7. Delphin
8. Schwein
9. Vogel
10. Kuh
11. Schlange

Video. Click to watch Easy German's video about dogs.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=591#oembed-2

Other der-words that have grown somewhat obsolete:

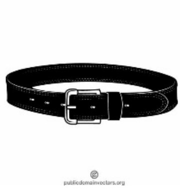
So far, you have been using dies-, jed-, welch-, and all- as der-words. There are a few more that function the same way, but they have been used less often over the past thirty years than previously.

- manch- many (a): Manche Kinder lernen Deutsch.
- jen- that: Jene Professorin geht nach Hause.
- solch- such: Solche Studenten arbeiten nicht.

Like *all*-, *manch*– and *solch*– are most often used in the plural forms

For now, it will be fine just to recognize them when you see them. You will see them more often in older texts, such as fairy tales or older German literature.

Ex. E: Wie finden Sie diesen Gürtel? Ask your classmates their opinion of the following clothing items. Don't forget that any direct objects must be in the accusative case, i.e. masculine adds an extra *–en*.

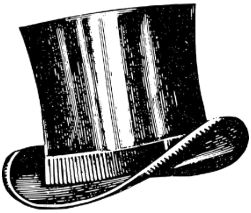


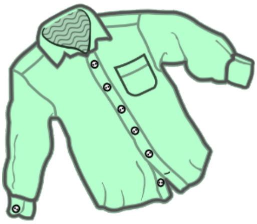
der Gürtel—belt
altmodisch—old-fashioned

Beispiel:

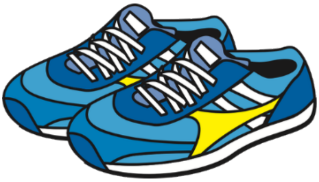
A: Wie findest du **diesen Gürtel**?
B: Ich finde ihn altmodisch.
A: Ich finde ihn aber schick!

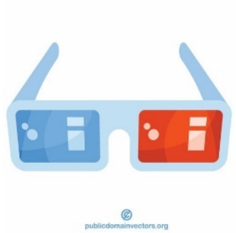
1.



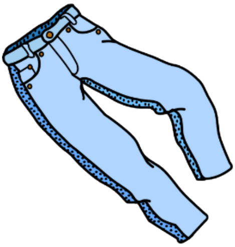


2.




publicdomainvectors.org

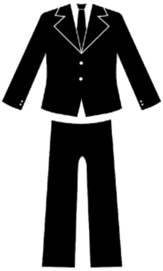
3.

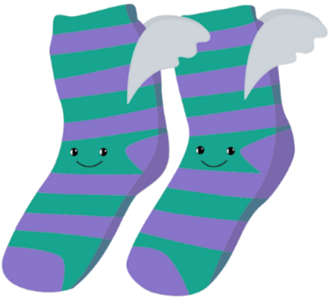


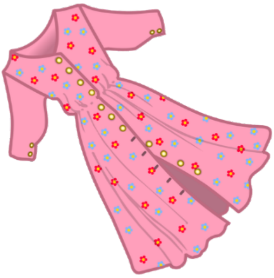
5.

6.

7.



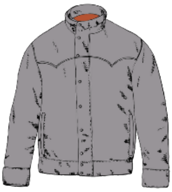
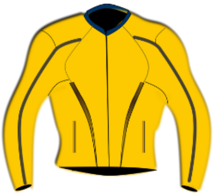
4. 

8. 

Ex. F: Der-words. Fill in with the correct form of the der- or ein-word. BEWARE! Both are in this exercise.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=591#h5p-55

Ex. G: Was soll ich kaufen? Tell your partner which option to choose (or not to choose!). Because these will be commands, you will need to use the imperative. Make sure that your direct object is in the accusative case. Remember, *nicht* will go AFTER the direct object and in front of prepositional phrases. Add one or two sentences after your command to explain why your partner should or should not choose this option.

Beispiel: kaufen

A: Kauf diese Jacke! (points to yellow jacket)

B: Aber warum denn?

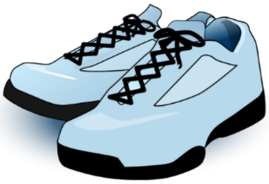
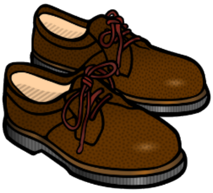
A: Sie ist neu.

ODER

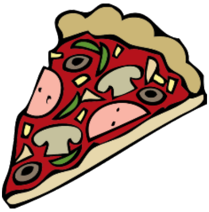
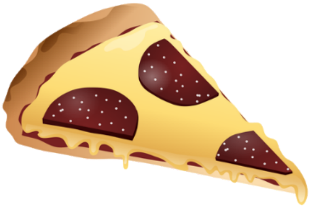
A: Kauf diese Jacke nicht! (points to gray jacket)

B: Aber warum denn nicht?

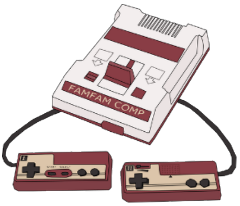
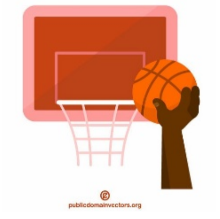
A: Sie ist zu alt.

1. tragen

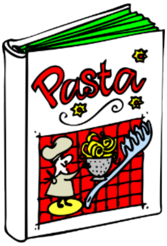



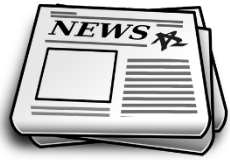
2. essen



publicdomainvectors.org

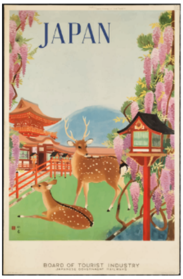
3. spielen

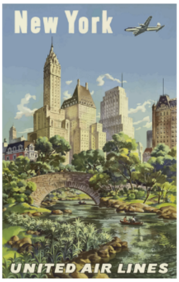
4. lesen



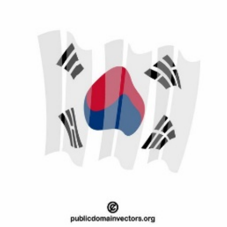


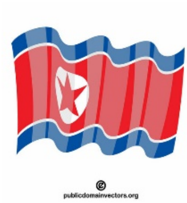
5. reisen (nach)


JAPAN
BOARD OF TOURIST INDUSTRY

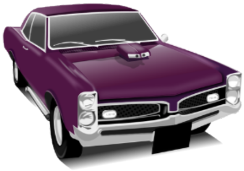

New York
UNITED AIR LINES

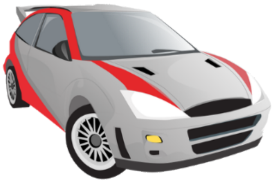
6. wohnen (in)


publicdomainvectors.org


publicdomainvectors.org

7. nehmen

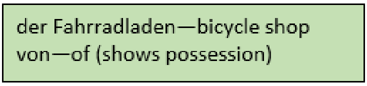




Check your listening comprehension with Claudia Kost's and Crystal Sawatzky's listening activity using der-words.

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=591#h5p-103

Ex. H: Video. Nicos Weg. Episode 24: Das Auto is rot. Watch episode 24 and do the online activities. You will review adjectives and their opposites, which you learned in Chapter 1, as well as how to negate adjectives by putting *nicht* in front of them. You will also review the conjugation of the verb *haben.*


der Fahrradladen—bicycle shop
von—of (shows possession)

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/das-auto-ist-rot/l-37401537

28. Section 3-4

3.4: WAVEM Words–Adjectives of Indefinite Number

When specifying quantities, we often use words that don't give an exact number, such as "many," "few," or "some." German also has adjectives of indefinite number. In this book, we will use the acronym WAVEM to remember them.

WAVEM	
W—wenig/wenige	little/few
A—andere	other
V—viel/viele	much/many
E—einige	some
M—mehrere	several

The WAVEM words that you see above that end in *–e* are plural. That means you will only use them in front of plural words.

- W: **Wenige** Kinder machen gern Hausaufgaben. (Kinder = plural)
- A: **Andere** Unis sind nicht so preiswert. (Unis = plural)
- V: **Viele** Studenten lernen eine Fremdsprache. (Studenten = plural)
- E: Ich finde **einige** Kurse langweilig. (Kurse = plural)

- M: Meine Großeltern kaufen **mehrere** Bücher. (Bücher = plural)

However, you will notice that there are two variations of *viel/viele* and *wenig/wenige*. How do we know which one to use?

viel—much wenig—little
viele—many wenige—few

The ones that end in *–e* will still be plural. We use *viel* or *wenig* when we are talking about collective items.

What is a collective item? Things that we usually don't count out separately, such as rice, money, time, or fish. In English, we use "much" to say that we have a lot of these items.

How **much** money do you have?
(Not, "how many money," which would sound strange.)

Similarly, in German, we do the same.

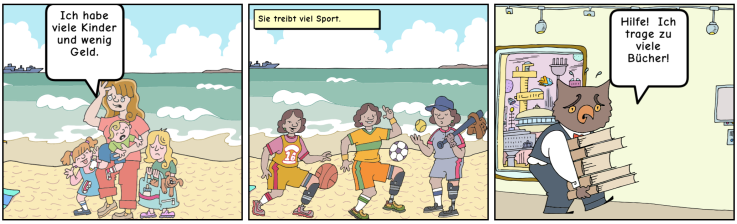
*Wie **viel** Geld hast du?*
(Because „Geld" is not plural).

However, if I want to say I have a lot of things that are typically plural in English, we will use **viele** in German.

*Wie **viele** Freunde hast du?*
(Because „Freunde" is plural).

It works the same with *wenig/wenige*. Use *wenige* for plural items; use *wenig* for collective items.

Ich habe wenig Geld. (I have little money.)
Ich habe wenige Freunde. (I have few friends.)


Ich habe viele Kinder und wenig Geld.
Sie treibt viel Sport.
Hilfe! Ich trage zu viele Bücher!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Watch Learn German's video to see a review of viel vs. viele.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=593#oembed-1

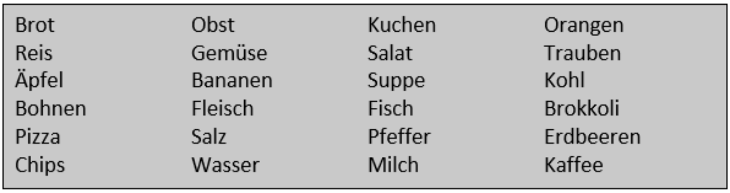
Watch Anja's video to see even more examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=593#oembed-2

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=593#h5p-122

Ex. B: Was essen Sie? Essen Sie viel/viele oder wenig/wenige? Trinken?

Beispiel: Ich esse **viel** Brot. Ich esse **wenige** Chips…usw.



Brot	Obst	Kuchen	Orangen
Reis	Gemüse	Salat	Trauben
Äpfel	Bananen	Suppe	Kohl
Bohnen	Fleisch	Fisch	Brokkoli
Pizza	Salz	Pfeffer	Erdbeeren
Chips	Wasser	Milch	Kaffee

Ex. C: Wo isst man…? Using the list from the previous exercise,

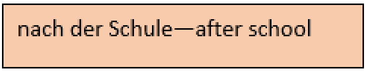
answer the following questions. Include *viel/viele* or *wenig/wenige* in your answer.

1. Wo isst man viel Reis?
2. Was isst man in Amerika?
3. Wer isst viele Gummibären?
4. Wo isst man viel Salat?
5. Wo isst man viel Fleisch?
6. Was isst man in Deutschland?
7. Was isst man in Frankreich?
8. Was isst mann auf Hawaii?
9. Was essen Vegetarier?
10. Was essen Kinder?
11. Was trinken Studenten?
12. Was trinkst du?

Ex. D: Auf Englisch! Übersetzen Sie ins Englische!

1. Unsere Eltern kaufen viel Obst und Gemüse.
2. Mein Neffe trägt viele Pullis.
3. Der Student trinkt wenig Milch.
4. Die Kinder haben andere Freunde.
5. Mehrere Cousinen besuchen uns nächste Woche.
6. Einige Cousinen kommen aus Europa; andere wohnen in Asien.
7. Frau Bauer, warum essen Sie wenig Joghurt?
8. Der Professor schreibt mehrere Bücher über Kunst.
9. Die Lehrerin liest einige Romane von Jane Austen.

Ex. E: Auf Deutsch! Übersetzen Sie ins Deutsche!


nach der Schule—after school

1. Many students drink a lot of coffee.
2. Other students drink too little water.
3. Many mountains are in the west.
4. Some mountains are in the east.

5. Marianne buys too much pasta.
6. My brother eats little meat, but I eat a lot of meat.
7. Mrs. Piepke, do you have other children?
8. Few teenagers work after school.
9. Several tourists like to hike in Germany.

Ex. F: Was gibt es bei Ihnen? Using the landscape words at the beginning of Chapter 3, describe your hometown or state? What is there a lot of or little of?

Beispiel: *Es gibt viele Autos. Es gibt wenige Bäume. Es gibt viele Seen…usw.*

Ex. G: Fragen. Listen to Silvia from AudioLingua introduce herself. Write three or four questions that could answer what she mentions about herself. (Hint, one of them should use "viele".)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=593#audio-593-1

Sesamstraße: Watch the video to see Grobi (Grover) explain the difference between viel und wenig to Krümelmonster (Cookie Monster.)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=593#oembed-3

29. Section 3-5

3.5: Modal Verbs

In English, we often combine two verbs together in one sentence.

I **can speak** German.

I **want to visit** my grandfather.

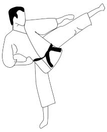
I **should do** my homework.

In German, we call such verbs as "can," "want to," and "should" **modal verbs**.

Ich **kann** Deutsch **sprechen**.

Ich **will** meinen Großvater **besuchen**.

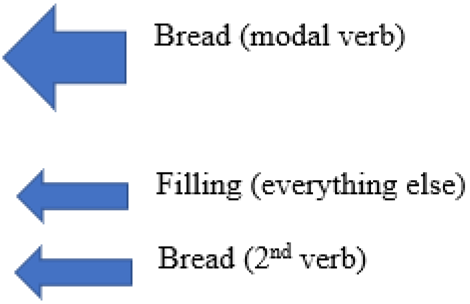
Ich **soll** meine Hausaufgaben **machen**.



SOMETHING TO NOTE: In German, the last verb gets kicked to the end of the sentence and is NOT conjugated.

Make a verb sandwich. The bread is like your two verbs. Put any direct objects and time expressions in between them.

"A Great Sandwich" by jamesjyu is marked with CC BY-NC-SA 2.0.

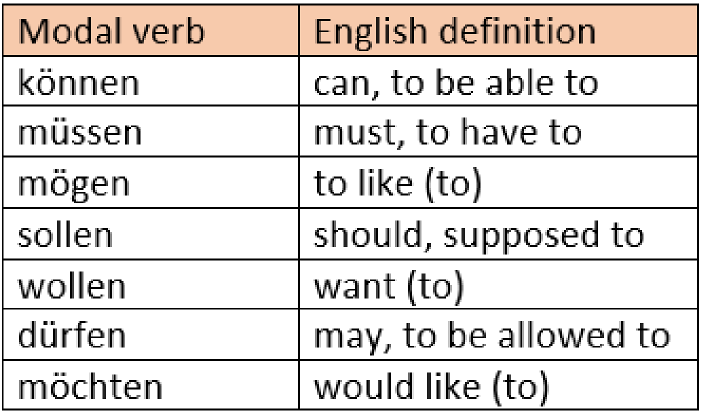


Subject/Verb 1/Everything Else/Verb 2

Whenever German has two verbs in the same sentence, the second one will ALWAYS go at the end of the sentence. You also did this in Chapter 2 when learning about the future tense, which used the helping verb *werden* + infinitive.

Ich **werde** nächsten Sommer nach Europa **reisen**.

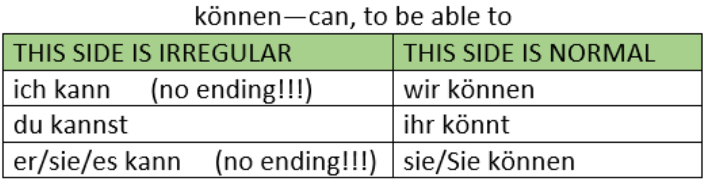
Modal verbs function the exact same way. Another good thing is that most of them at least begin with the same letter in English or sound similar.



Modal verb	English definition
können	can, to be able to
müssen	must, to have to
mögen	to like (to)
sollen	should, supposed to
wollen	want (to)
dürfen	may, to be allowed to
möchten	would like (to)

All of the modal verbs are irregular, which means their conjugations must be memorized.

BUT they all have a pattern!



können—can, to be able to

THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich kann (no ending!!!)	wir können
du kannst	ihr könnt
er/sie/es kann (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie können

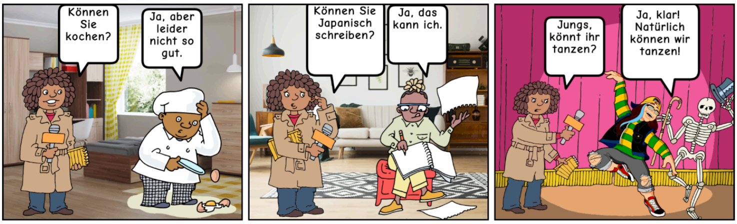
PATTERNS:

- The left side of the conjugation will always be irregular, BUT it will end up looking or sounding more like English.
- The right side of the conjugation will be regular, just like any other regular verb.
- "Ich" and "er/sie/es" will always mirror each other and have the same conjugation with no ending.
- The left side usually has no umlaut and changes the vowel completely.

If you can keep these patterns in mind, you will learn the modal verbs very quickly!

Watch Learn German's video to see the verb *können* being retaught.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-1


Können Sie kochen?
Ja, aber leider nicht so gut.
Können Sie Japanisch schreiben?
Ja, das kann ich.
Jungs, könnt ihr tanzen?
Ja, klar! Natürlich können wir tanzen!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

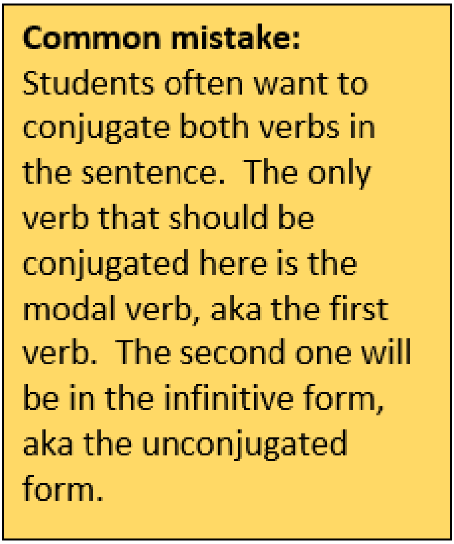
Ex. A: Was kannst du machen? Using the verbs below, make some sentences using the verb *können* about what you can and cannot do. Then move on to your family members and friends. Don't forget that the second verb must be at the end of the sentence.

Beispiel: kochen

→Ich kann sehr gut kochen.

→Mein Freund kann nicht kochen.

→Meine Tante und mein Onkel können gut kochen.



Common mistake:
Students often want to conjugate both verbs in the sentence. The only verb that should be conjugated here is the modal verb, aka the first verb. The second one will be in the infinitive form, aka the unconjugated form.

- kochen
- tanzen
- singen
- malen

- schreiben
- Basketball spielen
- joggen
- Deutsch sprechen
- fahren
- schlafen

Omission of the infinitive:

Sometimes, sentences with *können* leave out the second verb, especially if it can be easily figured out what the verb would be.

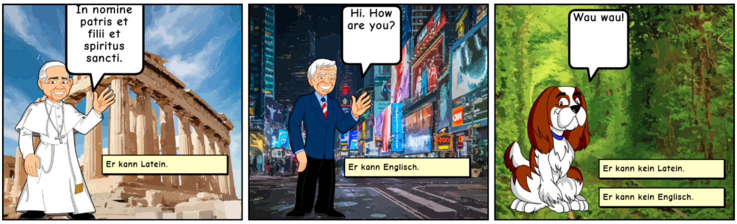
Kannst du Deutsch sprechen?

Kannst du Deutsch?

It looks like the second example would translate to “Can you German?”, but since German is a language, it is pretty obviously that the verb will have something to do with speaking. Therefore, we can leave the verb out. We often do this in English as well, though usually only when the verb is already known.

Can you come to the party?

Yes, I can. (Notice that we have no 2nd verb here!)


In nomine patris et filii et spiritus sancti.
Er kann Latein.
Hi. How are you?
Er kann Englisch.
Wau wau!
Er kann kein Latein.
Er kann kein Englisch.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. B: Können Sie Deutsch? Ask your classmates if they can speak the following languages. To practice both sides of the conjugation table, today you will use the Sie-form, treating your partner as a new acquaintance. If you do not speak the language, remember that you will negate it with *kein* to say that you speak no Italian, etc.

Beispiel: Italienisch

A: Können Sie Italienisch?

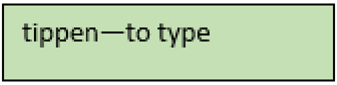
B: Ja, ich kann Italienisch.

ODER
B: Nein, ich kann kein Italienisch.
ODER
B: Ja, ich kann ein bisschen Italienisch.
A: Ich kann auch Italienisch.
ODER
A: Ich kann auch kein Italienisch.

- Englisch
- Französisch
- Russisch
- Spanisch
- Japanisch
- Deutsch
- Chinesisch
- Portugiesisch
- Schwedisch

Ex. C: Ein neuer Job! You have just applied for a new job. Make a list of your capabilities to impress the new company so that you have a better chance to get the job.

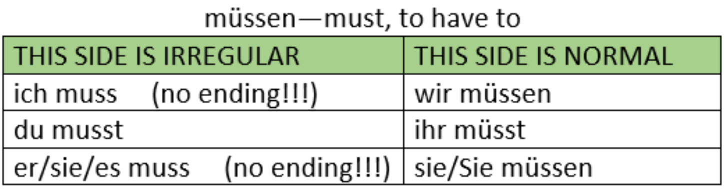
1. Ich kann sehr gut Englisch (sprechen.)
2. Ich kann…
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.


tippen—to type

Video. Click to watch me reteaching modal verbs *können* and *müssen*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-2

Use the modal verb *müssen* to express that you must do something or that you have to do something. Note that the left side drops the umlaut, but it looks a lot like the English word "must."



müssen—must, to have to

THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich muss (no ending!!!)	wir müssen
du musst	ihr müsst
er/sie/es muss (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie müssen

COMMON MISTAKE: Students often forget that English sometimes has more than one way to express one idea. For example, the sentence below could be translated two ways.

Ich **muss** Hausaufgaben machen.
(I **must** do homework.)
OR
(I **have to** do homework.)

It's not always a good idea to translate word for word. Feel free to rephrase the sentence in a similar English meaning before expressing in German.

Just as with *können*, the final infinitive can be omitted if it is very obvious based on context.

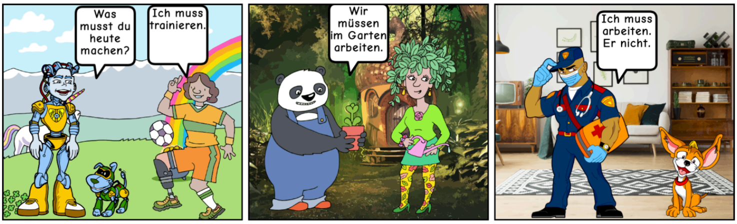
Wir **müssen** morgen nach Japan [fliegen/reisen/segeln.]
(We must [fly/travel/sail] to Japan tomorrow.)

Watch Learn German's video to see the verb *müssen* being retaught with lots of examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-3

Watch Anja's video to see more examples and practice exercises.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-4


Was musst du heute machen?
Ich muss trainieren.
Wir müssen im Garten arbeiten.
Ich muss arbeiten. Er nicht.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. D: Was müssen Sie heute machen?

Ich muss heute _________. Ich muss morgen _________.

Ex. E: Eine Einladung ablehnen. You have been invited to a party but don't want to go. Give some generic excuses about what you have to do instead.

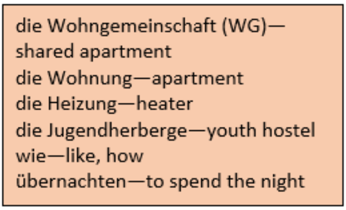
Ich kann leider nicht kommen. Ich muss __________.

Ex. F: Wer muss was machen? Take a survey of your classmates to find out who must do what during the next few days. Use the following questions, or come up with some of your own.

- Was müssen Sie heute machen?
- Was müssen Sie morgen machen?
- Was müssen Sie am Wochenende machen?
- Was müssen Sie nächste Woche machen?
- Was müssen Sie im Sommer machen?

Now write a brief paragraph about your classmates' plans.

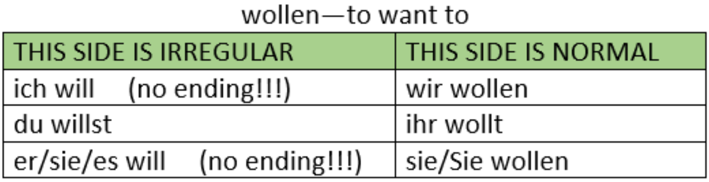
Ex. G: Nicos Weg. Episode 25: So wohne ich. Watch episode 25 and do the online activities. You will hear the modal verbs *können* and *müssen*. You will also review definite and indefinite articles, the accusative case, and plurals.



die Wohngemeinschaft (WG)—shared apartment
die Wohnung—apartment
die Heizung—heater
die Jugendherberge—youth hostel
wie—like, how
übernachten—to spend the night

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/so-wohne-ich/l-37425145

To say that you want to do something, use the modal verb *wollen*.

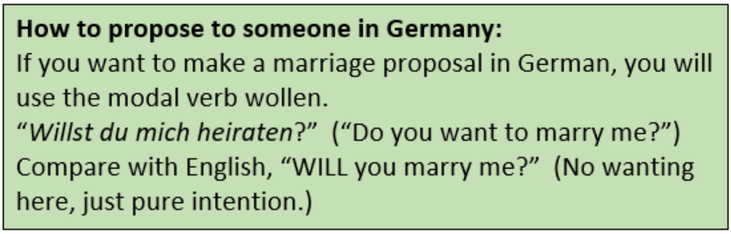


wollen—to want to

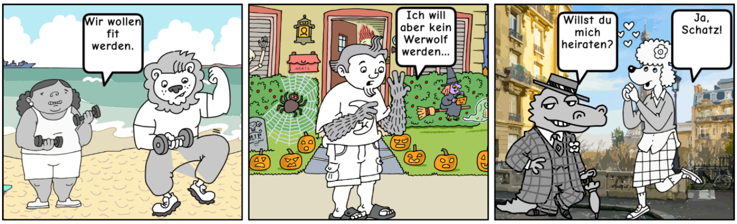
THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich will (no ending!!!)	wir wollen
du willst	ihr wollt
er/sie/es will (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie wollen

COMMON MISTAKE: Although this verb looks like the English verb "will," it means "to want to." You learned "will," aka future tense, in Chapter 2.

- Ich will nach Deutschland reisen. (I want to travel to Germany.)
- Ich werde nach Deutschland reisen. (I will travel to Germany.)



How to propose to someone in Germany:
If you want to make a marriage proposal in German, you will use the modal verb wollen.
"*Willst du mich heiraten*?" ("Do you want to marry me?")
Compare with English, "WILL you marry me?" (No wanting here, just pure intention.)


Wir wollen fit werden.
Ich will aber kein Werwolf werden...
Willst du mich heiraten?
Ja, Schatz!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Watch Learn German's video to see the verb *wollen* with lots of examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-5

Watch Anja's video to see her reteaching this and to see lots of examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-6

Ex. H: Was wollen Sie zum Geburtstag? What do you want for your birthday? What about your friends and family? Write a complete sentence for each person. Don't forget that any direct objects, i.e. the thing being wanted, must be in the accusative case. Tired of birthdays? Change it up and say what people want for Christmas—*zu Weihnachten.*

Beispiel: Eltern

→Meine Eltern wollen ein Auto zum Geburtstag.

1. ich
2. Bruder
3. du
4. Mutter
5. Großeltern
6. Nachbarn (neighbors)
7. Freund/Freundin
8. Hund/Katze
9. ihr

Ex. I: Was wollen Sie machen, und was müssen Sie machen? Sprechen Sie mit einem Partner darüber. Unten sind einige Vorschläge, aber Sie können antworten, wie Sie wollen!

A: Ich will __________, aber ich muss __________.

B: Ich auch. Ich muss auch __________.

ODER

B: Ja, ich will auch ___________.

- Hausaufgaben machen
- schwimmen gehen
- Videospiele spielen
- Schokolade essen
- gesund essen
- den ganzen Tag schlafen
- eine Reise nach ______ machen
- in Deutschland studieren

- arbeiten
- einen Job finden
- mehr Gemüse essen

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#h5p-123

EXTRA PRACTICE: (Courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#h5p-106

Click to listen to a song by D'artagnan, *Sieben Meilen*, (2016) that uses the modal verb *wollen*: *Ich will*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-7

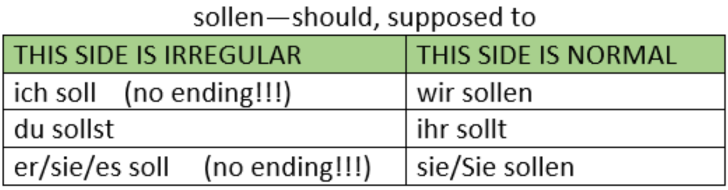
Lyrics: https://genius.com/Dartagnan-7-meilen-lyrics

Click to listen to *Das Gleiche*, a hit by Glasperlenspiel, (2011) that uses modal verbs *können* and *wollen*. You may hear a similar form of *können* that is *könnten* and means "could possibly."

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-8

Songtext: https://genius.com/Glasperlenspiel-das-gleiche-lyrics

To say that you should do something or are supposed to do something, use the modal verb *sollen*. This verb doesn't change the vowel at all, but it still leaves off the ending of the *ich* and the *er/sie/es* form. As always with modal verbs, make sure that the infinitive goes at the end of the sentence.



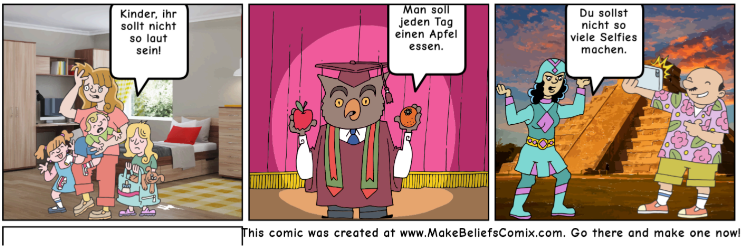
sollen—should, supposed to

THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich soll (no ending!!!)	wir sollen
du sollst	ihr sollt
er/sie/es soll (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie sollen

Du **sollst** deine Großeltern besuchen.
(You are supposed to/should visit your grandparents.)
Ihr **sollt** nicht so viele Süßigkeiten essen.
(Y'all/you guys shouldn't eat so many sweets.)

Watch Learn German's video to see more examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-9


Kinder, ihr sollt nicht so laut sein!
Man soll jeden Tag einen Apfel essen.
Du sollst nicht so viele Selfies machen.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Ex. K: Was sollen diese Leute machen? What should the following people do in order to solve their problems. Answer using the modal verb *sollen*. Give as many suggestions as possible.

Beispiel: Marina braucht Geld.

→Sie **soll** arbeiten. Sie **soll** einen Job finden…usw.

1. Stephan hat eine schlechte Note in Mathe.
2. Viele Leute sind ungesund und nicht fit.
3. Helga kann kein Englisch.
4. Monika und Anne haben eine Frage.
5. Es ist kalt, und Tina trägt ein T-shirt und eine kurze Hose.
6. Ich bin müde.

Ex. L: Die zehn Gebote für Studenten. Was sollen Studenten an Ihrer Uni machen oder nicht machen? Schreiben Sie „die 10 Gebote für Studenten.“

1. Man soll (nicht) bei Chick-fil-a essen.
2. Man soll…usw.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.
9.

Deutsche Musik. Listen to Santiano's song, *Ihr sollt nicht trauern*, to hear examples of the modal verb *sollen* as well as *ihr*-imperative.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-10

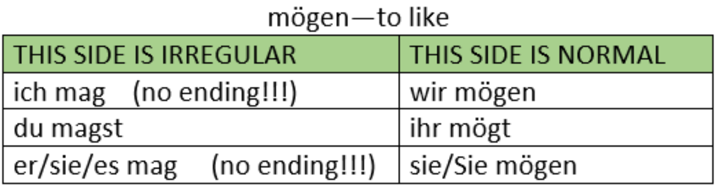
Liedertext: https://www.songtexte.com/songtext/santiano/ihr-sollt-nicht-trauern-g3e79dc7.html

You have already learned how to say that you like to do certain things by adding the word *gern* to any conjugated verb.

Ich **spiele gern** Videospiele und Golf.

(I like to play video games and golf.)

There is also a verb that means "to like" in German. Here it is below.



mögen—to like

THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich mag (no ending!!!)	wir mögen
du magst	ihr mögt
er/sie/es mag (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie mögen

In the example above, we could have easily said it with mögen to have the same meaning.

Ich mag Videospiele und Golf spielen.

This is grammatically correct, HOWEVER, the verb *mögen* is mostly used to say that you like things or people, without an extra verb on the end.

A: **Magst** du Pizza mit Oliven?

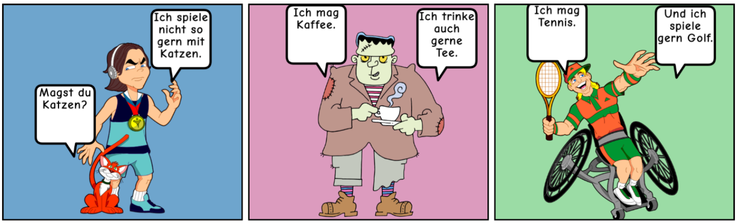
B: Nein, ich **mag** keine Oliven.

A: Mein Bruder und meine Schwester **mögen** Pizza mit Thunfisch.

This is similar to other examples of modal verbs in which the final infinitive is omitted. If we had used a final verb in the conversation above, it probably would have been *essen*, since that's what usually happens to pizza.

SUMMARY:

- Use *gern* + verb when you want to say that you like to DO something.
- Use *mögen* when you want to say that you like SOMETHING or SOMEONE. (Although if you forget and use a verb at the end, you will be understood!)


Magst du Katzen?
Ich spiele nicht so gern mit Katzen.
Ich mag Kaffee.
Ich trinke auch gerne Tee.
Ich mag Tennis.
Und ich spiele gern Golf.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

QUICK LISTENING: Listen to Dagmar, AudioLingua, talk about what she likes to eat. You will hear examples of the verb *mögen* (Ich mag) and also the verb *essen* + *gern*, (Ich esse gern…)

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#audio-596-1

EXTRA PRACTICE with modal verbs that omit the final infinitive at Germanzone.org's website, which will grade your answers.

- https://www.germanzone.org/modal-verbs-without-infinitives-present-tense-4/

Watch Anja's video to see a review of the verb mögen with lots of examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-11

Ex. M: Wer mag was? You are planning a party and want to know who likes what. Make sentences with the modal verb *mögen*, using the cues below.

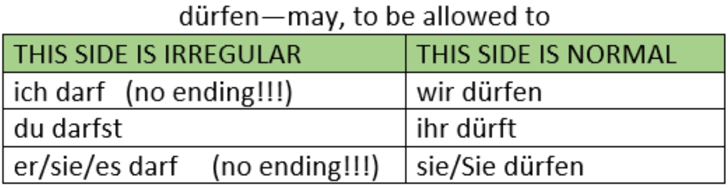
Beispiel: Werner/Obst (nein)
A: Mag Werner Obst?
B: Nein, er mag kein Obst.

1. die Kinder/Brokkoli (nein)
2. Brigitte und Sabine/Salat (ja)
3. du/Eis (?)
4. unsere Professorin/Brot (ja)
5. unsere Großeltern/Wassermelone (nein)
6. die Katze/Fisch (ja)
7. Ronja/Käse (nein)

Ex. N: Gastfamilie. Sie sind Austauschstudent/Austauschstudentin und wohnen bei einer deutschen Familie. Erklären Sie, was sie gerne oder nicht gerne essen. Verwenden Sie das Modalverb „mögen."

Beispiel: Ich mag Mineralwasser. Ich mag keinen Salat…usw.

To say that something is allowed or not allowed, you will use the modal verb *dürfen*.



dürfen—may, to be allowed to

THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich darf (no ending!!!)	wir dürfen
du darfst	ihr dürft
er/sie/es darf (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie dürfen

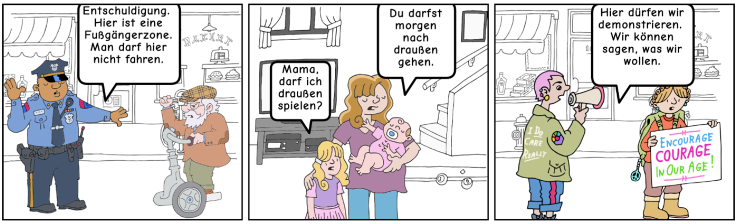
Like a lot of other modal verbs, *dürfen* changes the vowel in the left side of the conjugation but remains normal during the right side.

COMMON MISTAKE: Students often forget that dürfen can be translated to mean both "may" and "allowed to."

Wir **dürfen** hier fahren.
(We're **allowed to** drive here.)
(We **may** drive here.)

The indefinite pronoun *man* (you, one, they, people) is often seen together with this verb. It will be conjugated the same as *er/sie/es*.

Darf man hier rauchen?
(**May** one smoke here?)
(**Are** people **allowed to** smoke here?)


Entschuldigung. Hier ist eine Fußgängerzone. Man darf hier nicht fahren.
Mama, darf ich draußen spielen?
Du darfst morgen nach draußen gehen.
Hier dürfen wir demonstrieren. Wir können sagen, was wir wollen.
ENCOURAGE COURAGE IN OUR AGE!

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Watch Anja's video to see her reteaching the verb *dürfen*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-12

Watch Easy German's video to see lots of examples with *dürfen*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-13

Ex. O: Was darf man hier (nicht) machen?

Man darf hier __________. Man darf nicht __________.

- schlafen
- rauchen
- Skateboard fahren
- essen
- trinken
- sprechen
- lernen

EXTRA PRACTICE: (Courtesy of Claudia Kost & Crystal Sawatzky, University of Alberta.)

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#h5p-108

This last modal verb, *möchten*, is actually not a modal verb, but we often pass it off as one because it acts just like one and it is very practical when ordering food in a restaurant.

möchten—would like

THIS SIDE IS (slightly) IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich möchte	wir möchten
du möchtest	ihr möchtet
er/sie/es möchte	sie/Sie möchten

NOTE: There is an ending on *ich* and *er/sie/es*. This verb is completely regular except for the fact that *er/sie/es* does not end in *–t.*

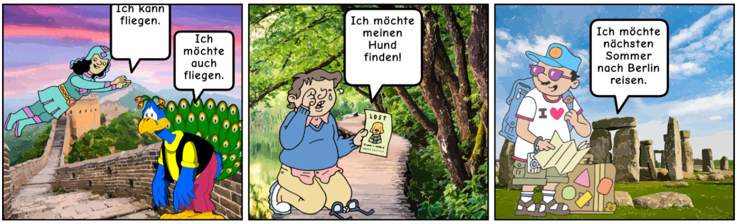
Look at the following exchange.

A: Guten Tag. Was möchten Sie trinken?
B: Ich möchte ein Glas Wasser.
A: Und was möchten Sie essen?
B: Ich möchte das Schnitzel mit Pommes.

Ordering in a restaurant is as easy as filling in the blanks of the sentence, "*Ich möchte* ______________."

- QUESTION: Can't I just use *wollen* to order my food? As in, "Ich will eine Pizza"?
- ANSWER: Well, yes, there's nothing grammatically wrong with that, but it's a lot more polite to say, "I would like a pizza," than "I want a pizza."

As for omitting the final verb, it can go either way. If it is implied, feel free to leave it out. If not, put it at the end of the sentence.


Ich kann fliegen.
Ich möchte auch fliegen.
Ich möchte meinen Hund finden!
LOST
Ich möchte nächsten Sommer nach Berlin reisen.
I ♥

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Watch Learn German's video to see the verb *möchten* being retaught.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-14

Ex. P: Die Zukunft. Was möchten Sie in 10 Jahren machen? In 20 Jahren?

1. Was möchten Sie im Sommer machen?
2. Was möchten Sie im Herbst machen?
3. Was möchten Sie nächstes Jahr machen?
4. Was möchten Sie in 5 Jahren machen?
5. Was möchten Sie in 10 Jahren machen?
6. Was möchten Sie in 20 Jahren machen?
7. Wohin möchten Sie im Frühling reisen?
8. Wo möchten Sie in 15 Jahren leben?
9. Wo möchten Sie in 10 Jahren arbeiten?

Ex. Q: Rollenspiel im Restaurant.

- One student plays the role of the waiter. Another plays the role of the customer.
- **Waiter**: Ask the customer what he would like to eat and drink. (Hint: möchten = would like)
- **Customer**: Order your food and drink. (Hint: use "möchten". Then ask at least 2 questions pertaining to food. (Hint: "Do you have…? Is the Pizza tasty? Does the soup have onions?)
- **Waiter**: Answer your customer's questions.

Listen to Lina Maly's song, *Schön genug*, 2016, to hear the modal verbs *mögen*, *sollen*, *müssen*, and *wollen.*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-15

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's site to do extra practice with the modal verb *möchten.*

- https://www.germanzone.org/the-verb-mochten/

Watch Easy German's video to see examples on the difference between *mögen*, *wollen*, and *möchten.*

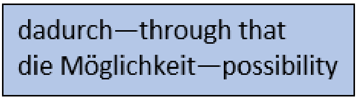
One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-16

Watch Easy German's video to see a review of all modal verbs with real life examples.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-17

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#h5p-124

Ex. S: Liste. Lesen Sie die Liste. Warum soll man Deutsch lernen? Was kann man mit Deutsch machen? Übersetzen Sie ins Englische!


dadurch—through that
die Möglichkeit—possibility

1. Man kann besser kommunizieren. 100 Millionen Menschen sprechen Deutsch in Europa.
2. Man kann in Deutschland arbeiten. (Und in Österreich, in der Schweiz und in Luxemburg.)
3. Man kann besser reisen! Die Deutschen reisen gern. Spanien ist ihr Lieblingsreiseziel.
4. Man kann in Deutschland studieren.
5. Man kann mehr lernen. Viele Internetseiten und Bücher sind auf Deutsch.
6. Man kann andere Kulturen besser kennenlernen. Dadurch versteht man die eigene Kultur besser.
7. Man kann in Osteuropa reisen. Viele Osteuropäer verstehen Deutsch.
8. Man kann die originale Version der Klassiker lesen—Beethoven, Goethe, Kafka, Kant…usw.
9. Es gibt Geld! Man kann kostenlos studieren. DaaD und andere Organisationen haben Geld für Studenten, die in Deutschland studieren möchten.
10. Man hat mehr Möglichkeiten, einen guten Job zu finden.

Ex. T: Übersetzen Sie ins Deutsche!

fließend—fluent
leider—unfortunately
jetzt—now

1. You're not allowed to eat here.
2. She can speak fluent German.
3. I'd like to travel around the world.
4. What would you like to drink?
5. Unfortunately, I can't come.
6. The children should do their homework now.
7. His sister has to work on Monday.
8. May I ask where you live?
9. Do you guys like pizza without cheese?

EXTRA PRACTICE: Go to Germanzone.org's site to do lots of extra practice with modal verbs. As always, the site will grade your answers.

- https://www.germanzone.org/modal-verbs-present-tense-1/
- https://www.germanzone.org/modal-verbs-present-tense-2/
- https://www.germanzone.org/modal-verbs-present-tense-3-verkehrsschilder/
- https://www.germanzone.org/modal-verbs-present-tense-5/

Ex. U: Artikel. Lesen Sie den Artikel über Tourismus in Deutschland und beantworten Sie die Fragen in ganzen Sätzen.

die Sehenswürdigkeit—tourist feature
eigen—own
Bratwurst—sausage
Kölsch—beer from Köln
das Gericht—dish
das Schloss—castle
eher—more likely to be
die deutsche Küche—German cuisine

Jedes Jahr reisen viele Touristen nach Deutschland. Es gibt viele Sehenswürdigkeiten—Flüsse, Berge, Seen und natürlich viele alte Schlösser.

Man kann in Deutschland sehr billig reisen. Es gibt überall

Züge und Busse, und man kann auch zu Fuß gehen. Deutsche Städte haben viele Fußgängerzonen. Hier dürfen keine Autos fahren. Man kann ohne Probleme durch die Stadt spazieren.

Es gibt auch viele leckere Restaurants und Cafes, wo man deutsche Spezialitäten probieren kann. Jede deutsche Stadt hat seine eigene Spezialität. In Aachen, zum Beispiel, findet man Printen. In Nürnberg ist Wurst sehr beliebt—die nürnberger Rostbratwurst. Sogar Bier kann eine Spezialität sein; in Köln trinkt man Kölsch. Für Vegetarier gibt es auch viel zu probieren; ungefähr acht Millionen Deutsche essen kein Fleisch. Viele Restaurants haben vegetarische Gerichte.

Man soll die vielen alten Schlösser nicht vergessen! Einige, wie Neuschwanstein in Bayern, sind nicht so alt. Andere stammen aus dem Mittelalter. Oft sieht man in Deutschland moderne Häuser und alte Gebäude nebeneinander. In Deutschland sieht man neue Technologie und alte Kultur jeden Tag.

1. Beschreiben Sie die Landschaft in Deutschland.
2. Wie kann man in Deutschland reisen?
3. Was ist eine Fußgängerzone? Was kann man dort finden? Was kann man nicht finden?
4. Meinen Sie, die deutsche Küche ist auch eine „Sehenswürdigkeit“? Warum oder warum nicht?
5. Wie viele Vegetarier gibt es in Deutschland?
6. Was und wo ist Neuschwanstein?
7. Beschreiben Sie eine typische deutsche Stadt. Ist sie eher modern oder altmodisch? Warum?
8. Was möchten Sie in Deutschland sehen?

Video. Watch Easy German’s video about cats. You will hear several modal verbs that you have learned in this chapter.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=596#oembed-18

30. Section 3-6

3.6: Wissen vs. kennen

In chapter 2, you learned the verb *kennen*, to know or to be familiar with. We use this verb to talk about knowing people or being familiar with a film, city, or movie.

A: **Kennst** du meinen Mitbewohner?
B: Nein, ich **kenne** ihn nicht.
A: Aber du **kennst** den Film *Goodbye Lenin*, oder?
B: Ja, natürlich **kenne** ich ihn!
A: Mein Mitbewohner war in einer Szene im Film.

This conversation was about knowing a person and being familiar with a film. Therefore, we can use the verb *kennen* here.

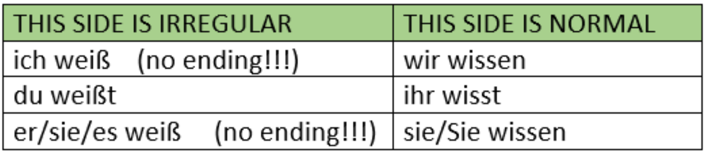
In German, there are two verbs that mean "to know." The second of these, *wissen*, is used to talk about knowing facts.

Wir **wissen** die Antwort.
Ihr **wisst**, wo wir wohnen.
Wissen Sie, wann der Film beginnt?

Knowing the answer or where someone lives or when a film begins are all facts. Therefore, we use *wissen* instead of *kennen*.

Wissen is also slightly irregular and has the exact same pattern as modal verbs; the left side of the conjugation is irregular, but the right-hand side is completely normal.

wissen—to know (a fact)



THIS SIDE IS IRREGULAR	THIS SIDE IS NORMAL
ich weiß (no ending!!!)	wir wissen
du weißt	ihr wisst
er/sie/es weiß (no ending!!!)	sie/Sie wissen

If you can remember the pattern of the modal verbs, it will be easier to learn the conjugation of *wissen*.

THE GOOD NEWS—this is the last irregular verb in present tense in the German language! From here on out, they are all regular.

Beispiele: wissen (fact) oder kennen (familiar with)?

A: **Kennst** du meine Schwester?
(Knowing a person, being familiar with person)

B: Ja, ich **kenne** sie schon lange.
(Knowing a person, being familiar with person)

A: Sie wohnt in Stuttgart. **Kennst** du die Stadt?
(Being familiar with city)

B: Nein, nicht so gut, aber ich **weiß**, wo Stuttgart liegt.
(Knowing where the city lies, is a fact.)

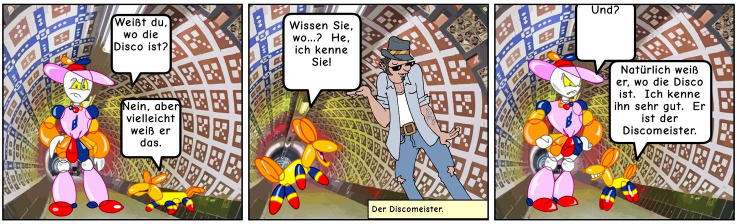
A: Ich **weiß**, sie vermisst dich. Du sollst sie irgendwann mal besuchen.
(Knowing that she misses the person is a fact.)

B: Ich **weiß** ihre Adresse nicht.
(Knowing an address is a fact.)

HINT: If the sentence has a comma and what looks like another sentence after it, it's probably "wissen." i.e. *Sie wissen, was die Kinder machen.*

SUMMARY:

- kennen = to know (a person); to be familiar with (a city, a book, a film, etc.)
- wissen = to know a fact (conjugated like a modal verb)


Weißt du, wo die Disco ist?
Nein, aber vielleicht weiß er das.
Wissen Sie, wo...? He, ich kenne Sie!
Der Discomeister.
Und?
Natürlich weiß er, wo die Disco ist. Ich kenne ihn sehr gut. Er ist der Discomeister.

This comic was created at www.MakeBeliefsComix.com. Go there and make one now!

Click to see me reteaching *wissen* vs. *kennen.*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#oembed-1

Watch YourGermanTeacher's short video to see another recap:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#oembed-2

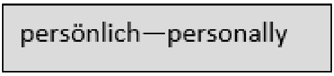
Watch German Online Gym's video to see a detailed explanation of *wissen*. The second video goes into detail on *kennen*.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#oembed-3

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#oembed-4

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#h5p-125

Ex. B: Übersetzen Sie ins Deutsche!



persönlich—personally

1. I don't know where you live.
2. We know his grandparents.
3. Do you know when the movie begins?
4. I know, it begins tomorrow, but I don't know when.
5. Are you familiar with Canada?
6. Do you know Beyonce?
7. I don't know her personally, but I know who she is.
8. Who knows the answer?
9. A: You're not healthy. B: Yes, I know (it).

EXTRA PRACTICE: For extra practice conjugating wissen, go to Germanzone.org's site and do the exercise. The website will grade your answers.

- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-wissen-1/
- https://www.germanzone.org/verb-wissen-2/

Listen to Nena's hit song, *Du kennst die Liebe nicht*, (1985), to hear examples with the verb *kennen.*

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=598#oembed-5

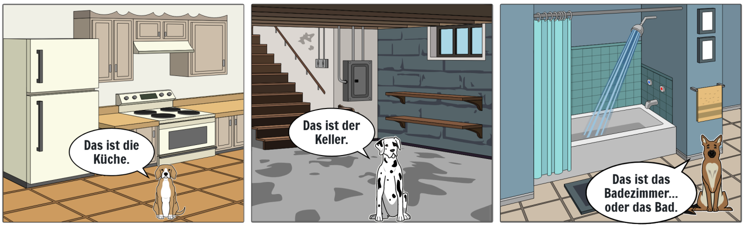
Songtext: https://genius.com/Nena-du-kennst-die-liebe-nicht-lyrics

Ex. C: Nicos Weg. Episode 26: Meine Wohnung. Watch the video and do the online activities associated with it. You will learn vocabulary for rooms of the house and how to describe your own house.

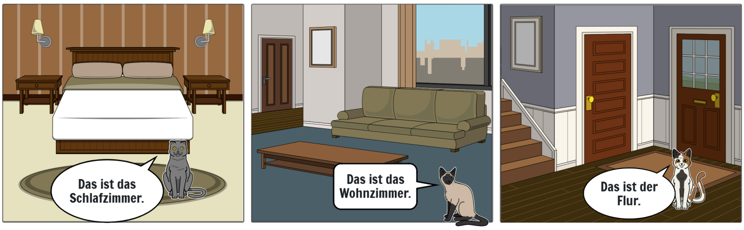
die Küche—kitchen
das Wohnzimmer—living room
das Badezimmer—bathroom
das Bad—bathroom
die Toilette—toilet
das Schlafzimmer—bedroom
der Keller—basement
der Flur—hallway

gemütlich—comfortable
hell—light
dunkel—dark
ruhig—quiet
lang—long
im Stadtzentrum—in the center of the city
laut—loud

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/meine-wohnung/l-37425763


Das ist die Küche.
Das ist der Keller.
Das ist das Badezimmer... oder das Bad.

Create your own at Storyboard That


Das ist das Schlafzimmer.
Das ist das Wohnzimmer.
Das ist der Flur.

Create your own at Storyboard That

Ex. D: Alles über Ihr Haus! Beantworten Sie die Fragen in ganzen Sätzen.

1. Haben Sie ein Haus oder eine Wohnung?
2. Wie viele Zimmer hat Ihr Haus oder Ihre Wohnung?
3. Wohnen Sie in der Stadt oder auf dem Land?
4. Haben Sie einen Balkon?
5. Haben Sie einen Flur?
6. Wie viele Badezimmer haben Sie?
7. Welche Zimmer gibt es in Ihrem Haus oder in Ihrer Wohnung?
8. Beschreiben Sie Ihr Schlafzimmer. Die Küche. Das Wohnzimmer. Das Bad. Den Keller.

Ex. E: Beschreiben Sie Ihr Haus oder Ihre Wohnung! Schreiben Sie einen kurzen Absatz über Ihr Haus oder Ihre Wohnung. Haben Sie Probleme? Benutzen Sie die Fragen in Übung D.

31. Section 3-7

3.7: Oral Proficiency Interview Practice:

Ex. 1: (Time goal 0:45-1:00)

You are interviewing for a job. Describe why you are right for the job, i.e. tell what you can do using modal verbs.

Ex. 2: (Time goal 0:45-1:00)

What are people allowed to do here at the university? What is not allowed? (Hint: Use *man* and the verb *dürfen*.)

Ex. 3: (Time goal 1:00-1:15)

You have been invited to a party but don't want to go. Say that you can't come, and make as many excuses as possible by telling your friend what you have to do and are supposed to do tonight instead, using as many modal verbs as possible.

Ex. 4: (Time goal 1:00-1:15)

You are in a restaurant. Place your order for a drink and food. Ask at least three questions.

Ex. 5: (Time goal 1:00-1:15)

You meet an incoming freshman who knows nothing about life at the university. Using the imperative, give him tips on what to do or not to do.

Ex. 6: (Time goal 1:00-1:15)

Beschreiben Sie Ihr Haus oder Ihre Wohnung! Welche Zimmer haben Sie? Erläutern Sie!

Ex. 7: (Time goal 0:45-1:00)

Welche Kurse haben Sie dieses Semester und um welche Uhrzeit? Welcher Kurs ist ihr Lieblingskurs und warum? Erläutern Sie!

Ex. 8: (Time goal 0:45-1:00)

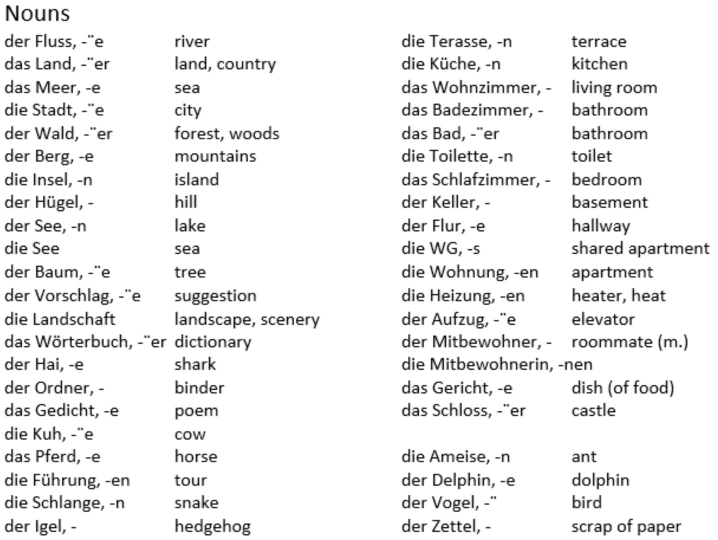
Ihr Freund ist sehr ungesund und möchte fit und gesund werden. Geben Sie Ihm viele Ratschläge (pieces of advice) im Imperativ. Was soll er machen oder nicht machen, um gesund zu werden? Erläutern Sie!

Ex. 9: (Time goal 0:45-1:00)

Warum sollen Touristen Ihre Heimatstadt besuchen? Wo liegt ihre Heimatstadt? Beschreiben Sie die Landschaft (scenery). Welche Sehenswürdigkeiten gibt es? Welche Tiere gibt es? Was finden Sie schön oder nicht schön?

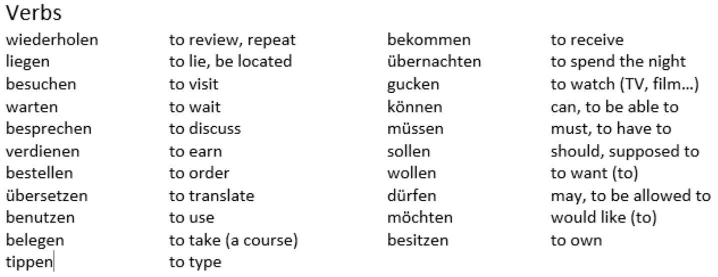
32. Chapter 3 - Glossary

Kapitel 3 Wortschatz



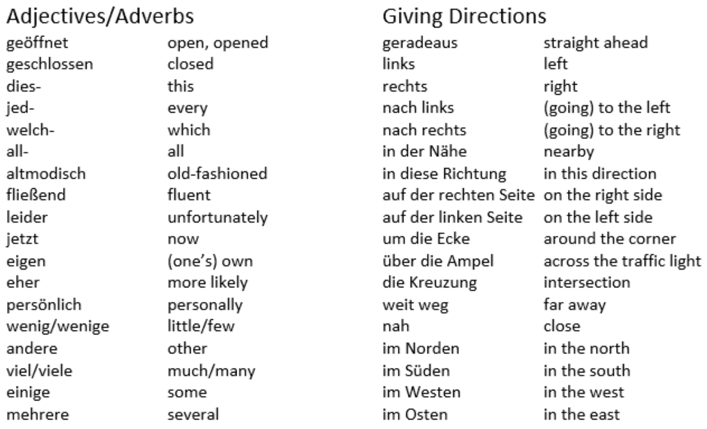
Nouns

der Fluss, -¨e	river	die Terasse, -n	terrace
das Land, -¨er	land, country	die Küche, -n	kitchen
das Meer, -e	sea	das Wohnzimmer, -	living room
die Stadt, -¨e	city	das Badezimmer, -	bathroom
der Wald, -¨er	forest, woods	das Bad, -¨er	bathroom
der Berg, -e	mountains	die Toilette, -n	toilet
die Insel, -n	island	das Schlafzimmer, -	bedroom
der Hügel, -	hill	der Keller, -	basement
der See, -n	lake	der Flur, -e	hallway
die See	sea	die WG, -s	shared apartment
der Baum, -¨e	tree	die Wohnung, -en	apartment
der Vorschlag, -¨e	suggestion	die Heizung, -en	heater, heat
die Landschaft	landscape, scenery	der Aufzug, -¨e	elevator
das Wörterbuch, -¨er	dictionary	der Mitbewohner, -	roommate (m.)
der Hai, -e	shark	die Mitbewohnerin, -nen	
der Ordner, -	binder	das Gericht, -e	dish (of food)
das Gedicht, -e	poem	das Schloss, -¨er	castle
die Kuh, -¨e	cow		
das Pferd, -e	horse	die Ameise, -n	ant
die Führung, -en	tour	der Delphin, -e	dolphin
die Schlange, -n	snake	der Vogel, -¨	bird
der Igel, -	hedgehog	der Zettel, -	scrap of paper



Verbs

wiederholen	to review, repeat	bekommen	to receive
liegen	to lie, be located	übernachten	to spend the night
besuchen	to visit	gucken	to watch (TV, film…)
warten	to wait	können	can, to be able to
besprechen	to discuss	müssen	must, to have to
verdienen	to earn	sollen	should, supposed to
bestellen	to order	wollen	to want (to)
übersetzen	to translate	dürfen	may, to be allowed to
benutzen	to use	möchten	would like (to)
belegen	to take (a course)	besitzen	to own
tippen	to type		



Adjectives/Adverbs

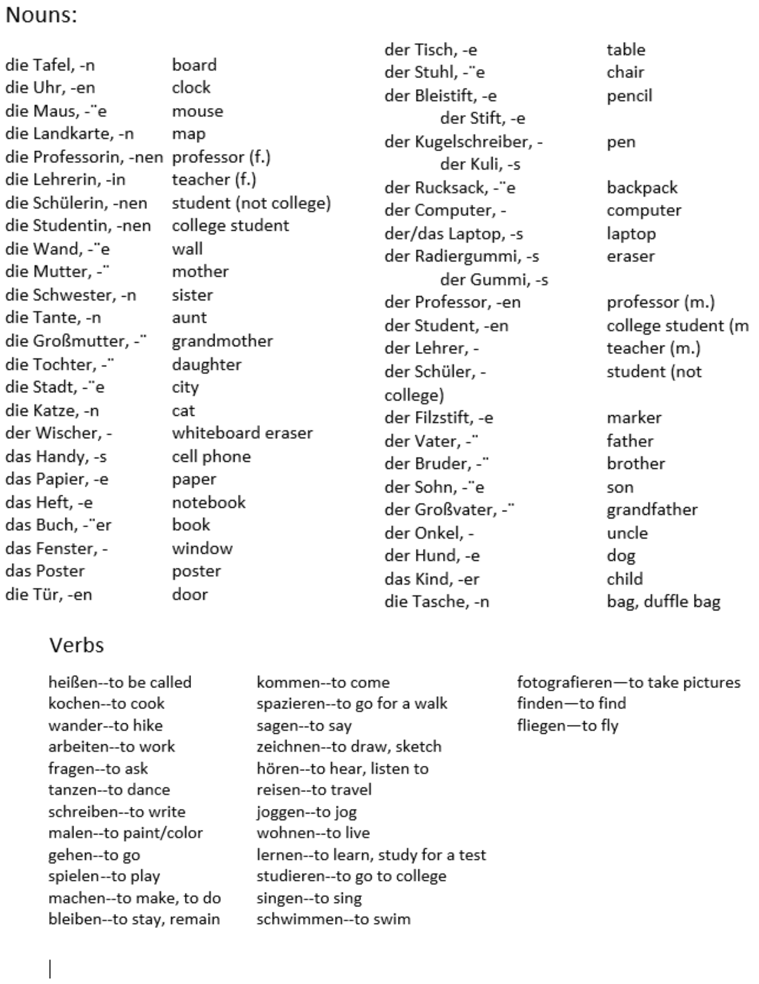
geöffnet	open, opened
geschlossen	closed
dies-	this
jed-	every
welch-	which
all-	all
altmodisch	old-fashioned
fließend	fluent
leider	unfortunately
jetzt	now
eigen	(one's) own
eher	more likely
persönlich	personally
wenig/wenige	little/few
andere	other
viel/viele	much/many
einige	some
mehrere	several

Giving Directions

geradeaus	straight ahead
links	left
rechts	right
nach links	(going) to the left
nach rechts	(going) to the right
in der Nähe	nearby
in diese Richtung	in this direction
auf der rechten Seite	on the right side
auf der linken Seite	on the left side
um die Ecke	around the corner
über die Ampel	across the traffic light
die Kreuzung	intersection
weit weg	far away
nah	close
im Norden	in the north
im Süden	in the south
im Westen	in the west
im Osten	in the east

Chapter 1 - Glossary

Kapitel 1 Wortschatz

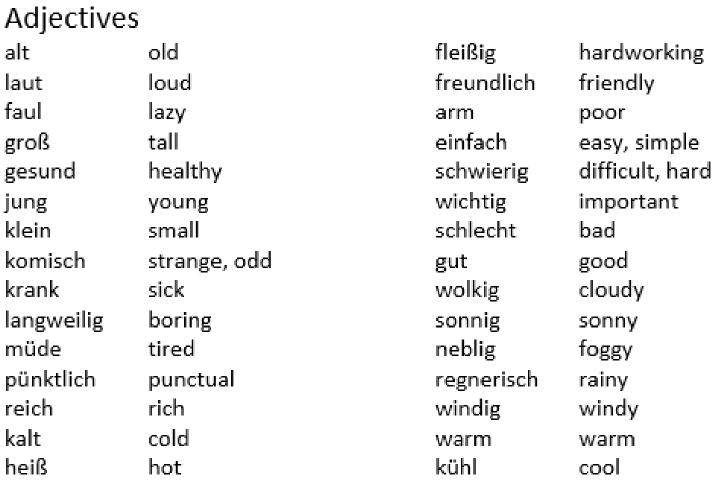


Nouns:

die Tafel, -n	board
die Uhr, -en	clock
die Maus, -¨e	mouse
die Landkarte, -n	map
die Professorin, -nen	professor (f.)
die Lehrerin, -in	teacher (f.)
die Schülerin, -nen	student (not college)
die Studentin, -nen	college student
die Wand, -¨e	wall
die Mutter, -¨	mother
die Schwester, -n	sister
die Tante, -n	aunt
die Großmutter, -¨	grandmother
die Tochter, -¨	daughter
die Stadt, -¨e	city
die Katze, -n	cat
der Wischer, -	whiteboard eraser
das Handy, -s	cell phone
das Papier, -e	paper
das Heft, -e	notebook
das Buch, -¨er	book
das Fenster, -	window
das Poster	poster
die Tür, -en	door
der Tisch, -e	table
der Stuhl, -¨e	chair
der Bleistift, -e	pencil
der Stift, -e	
der Kugelschreiber, -	pen
der Kuli, -s	
der Rucksack, -¨e	backpack
der Computer, -	computer
der/das Laptop, -s	laptop
der Radiergummi, -s	eraser
der Gummi, -s	
der Professor, -en	professor (m.)
der Student, -en	college student (m
der Lehrer, -	teacher (m.)
der Schüler, -	student (not college)
der Filzstift, -e	marker
der Vater, -¨	father
der Bruder, -¨	brother
der Sohn, -¨e	son
der Großvater, -¨	grandfather
der Onkel, -	uncle
der Hund, -e	dog
das Kind, -er	child
die Tasche, -n	bag, duffle bag

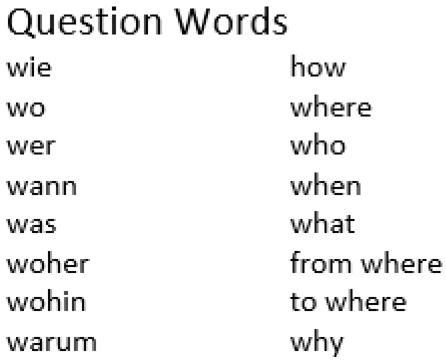
Verbs

heißen--to be called
kochen--to cook
wander--to hike
arbeiten--to work
fragen--to ask
tanzen--to dance
schreiben--to write
malen--to paint/color
gehen--to go
spielen--to play
machen--to make, to do
bleiben--to stay, remain
kommen--to come
spazieren--to go for a walk
sagen--to say
zeichnen--to draw, sketch
hören--to hear, listen to
reisen--to travel
joggen--to jog
wohnen--to live
lernen--to learn, study for a test
studieren--to go to college
singen--to sing
schwimmen--to swim
fotografieren—to take pictures
finden—to find
fliegen—to fly



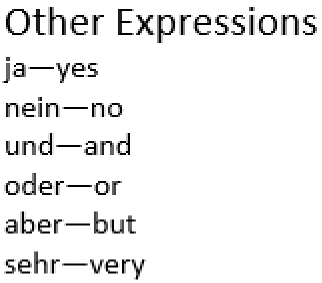
Adjectives

alt	old	fleißig	hardworking
laut	loud	freundlich	friendly
faul	lazy	arm	poor
groß	tall	einfach	easy, simple
gesund	healthy	schwierig	difficult, hard
jung	young	wichtig	important
klein	small	schlecht	bad
komisch	strange, odd	gut	good
krank	sick	wolkig	cloudy
langweilig	boring	sonnig	sonny
müde	tired	neblig	foggy
pünktlich	punctual	regnerisch	rainy
reich	rich	windig	windy
kalt	cold	warm	warm
heiß	hot	kühl	cool



Question Words

wie	how
wo	where
wer	who
wann	when
was	what
woher	from where
wohin	to where
warum	why



Other Expressions

ja—yes
nein—no
und—and
oder—or
aber—but
sehr—very

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-56

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this

version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-57

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-58

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-59

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-60

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=510#h5p-61

Chapter 1 - Extra Practice

EXTRA PRACTICE: Goethe Institut: *Erste Wege in Deutschland*

→Folge 1 (Episode 1)—Im Bus (In the Bus)

- https://www.goethe.de/prj/mwd/en/deu/miniserie/imbus.html.

Click on the link to go to the video with interactive exercises. You should get a better understanding of how the bus system in Germany works, as well as some basic everyday phrases. The exercises may have some words in them that you don't understand, but a dictionary can help.

→Deutsche Welle–Vocabulary Trainer

- https://learngerman.dw.com/en/deutschtrainer/c-56705009.

The following vocabulary lessons have content from this chapter and future chapters. Each exercise starts with a brief video and has interactive exercises for practicing vocabulary. If you want to do a lesson again, simply hit "reset" next to the exercise and try it as many times as you want.

→DuoLingo—German

- https://www.duolingo.com/learn.

This site offers mostly vocabulary practice and translation exercises. You will need to set up an account (free). The vocabulary does not necessarily follow the exact order of this textbook, but it will definitely build up your vocabulary, which will help you later on. For example, the first exercises cover food, which we will do in Chapter 2.

→Mondly—German

- https://app.mondly.com/tutorial.

Like DuoLingo, this site offers mostly vocabulary practice and translation exercises. However, it is organized around certain vocabulary themes that you can select at random. You will need to set up an account (free). Between exercises, the site will advertise programs that you can buy, but it will disappear if you click on the next activity.

EXTRA PRACTICE: family, possessive adjectives, haben/sein, and other verb conjugations, the alphabet, classroom items, and negation.

VHS Lernportal—A1 German Course.

- https://a1.vhs-lernportal.de/wws/9.php#/wws/home.php.

You will need to set up an account (free!), and click on the A1 course. Click on the tab to change the site interface to English if you wish…or try it in German. You should now be able to continue to the following lessons, which review the material covered in this chapter.

Chapter 2 - Extra Practice

EXTRA PRACTICE:

Deutsche Welle–Vocabulary Trainer

https://learngerman.dw.com/en/deutschtrainer/c-56705009.

Each exercise starts with a brief video and has interactive exercises for practicing vocabulary.

For some of these exercises, the following words will be helpful:

- möchten—would like
- kann/können—can
- hätte gerne—would like

If you want to do a lesson again, simply hit “reset” next to the exercise and try it as many times as you want.

Lingua.com’s vocabulary trainer:

You can set this to train your active vocabulary and your passive vocabulary. Instant feedback!

https://lingua.com/german/vocabulary/trainer/.

Lingua.com’s dictation trainer:

Listen to several sentences read aloud—the first time at normal speed and the second time slowly. Then type in what you hear. This is a great way to connect what you hear with the written form. The computer checks your answers automatically.

https://lingua.com/german/dictation/.

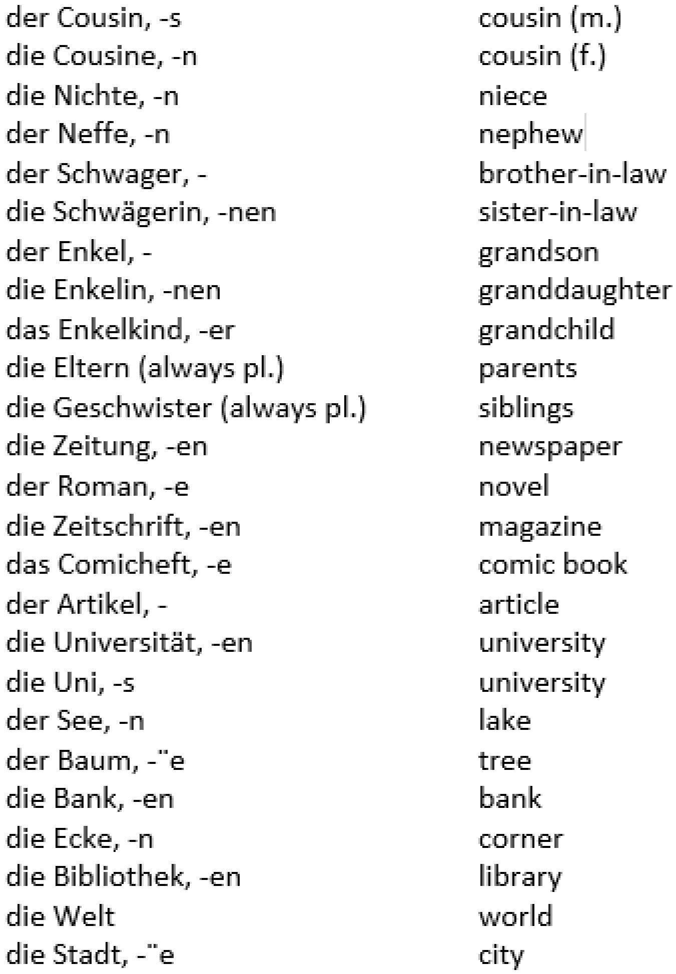
Lingua.com’s listening practice:

Here you can listen to several readings and then answer questions about them. It may be challenging at first, but keep at it to develop awesome listening skills in German!

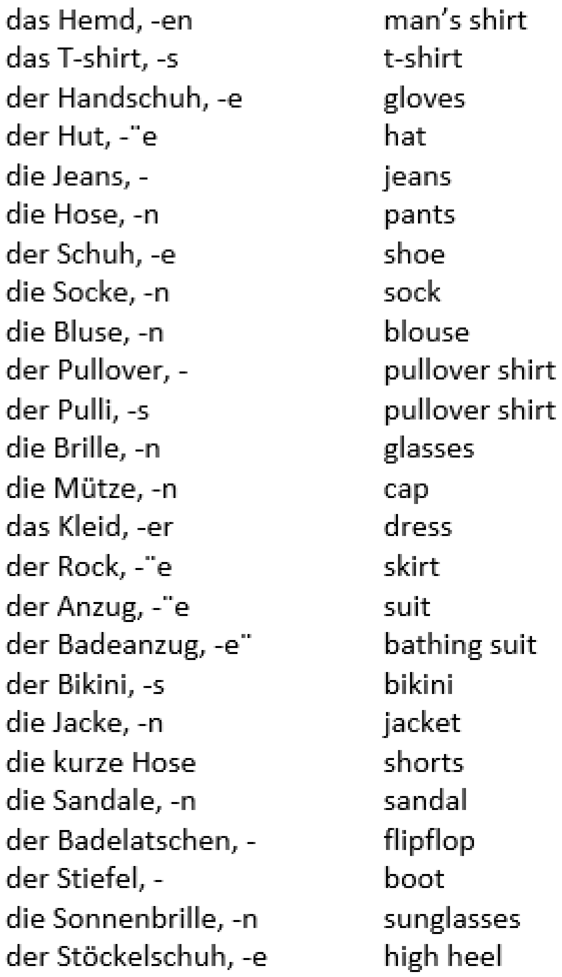
https://lingua.com/german/listening/.

Chapter 2 - Glossary

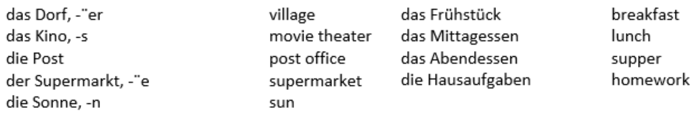
Nouns:



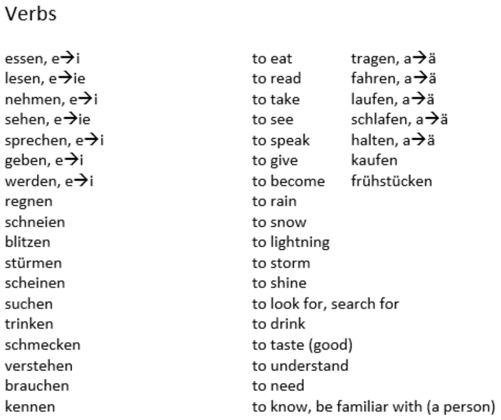
der Cousin, -s	cousin (m.)
die Cousine, -n	cousin (f.)
die Nichte, -n	niece
der Neffe, -n	nephew
der Schwager, -	brother-in-law
die Schwägerin, -nen	sister-in-law
der Enkel, -	grandson
die Enkelin, -nen	granddaughter
das Enkelkind, -er	grandchild
die Eltern (always pl.)	parents
die Geschwister (always pl.)	siblings
die Zeitung, -en	newspaper
der Roman, -e	novel
die Zeitschrift, -en	magazine
das Comicheft, -e	comic book
der Artikel, -	article
die Universität, -en	university
die Uni, -s	university
der See, -n	lake
der Baum, -¨e	tree
die Bank, -en	bank
die Ecke, -n	corner
die Bibliothek, -en	library
die Welt	world
die Stadt, -¨e	city



das Hemd, -en	man’s shirt
das T-shirt, -s	t-shirt
der Handschuh, -e	gloves
der Hut, -¨e	hat
die Jeans, -	jeans
die Hose, -n	pants
der Schuh, -e	shoe
die Socke, -n	sock
die Bluse, -n	blouse
der Pullover, -	pullover shirt
der Pulli, -s	pullover shirt
die Brille, -n	glasses
die Mütze, -n	cap
das Kleid, -er	dress
der Rock, -¨e	skirt
der Anzug, -¨e	suit
der Badeanzug, -e¨	bathing suit
der Bikini, -s	bikini
die Jacke, -n	jacket
die kurze Hose	shorts
die Sandale, -n	sandal
der Badelatschen, -	flipflop
der Stiefel, -	boot
die Sonnenbrille, -n	sunglasses
der Stöckelschuh, -e	high heel



das Dorf, -¨er	village	das Frühstück	breakfast
das Kino, -s	movie theater	das Mittagessen	lunch
die Post	post office	das Abendessen	supper
der Supermarkt, -¨e	supermarket	die Hausaufgaben	homework
die Sonne, -n	sun		



Verbs

essen, e→i	to eat	tragen, a→ä	to wear
lesen, e→ie	to read	fahren, a→ä	to drive
nehmen, e→i	to take	laufen, a→ä	to run, walk fast
sehen, e→ie	to see	schlafen, a→ä	to sleep
sprechen, e→i	to speak	halten, a→ä	to halt, stop
geben, e→i	to give	kaufen	to buy
werden, e→i	to become	frühstücken	to eat breakfast
regnen	to rain		
schneien	to snow		
blitzen	to lightning		
stürmen	to storm		
scheinen	to shine		
suchen	to look for, search for		
trinken	to drink		
schmecken	to taste (good)		
verstehen	to understand		
brauchen	to need		
kennen	to know, be familiar with (a person)		

Prepositions and Other Expressions

durch	through
für	for
gegen	against
ohne	without
um	around; at (time)
bis	until
danke	thank you
bitte	please; you’re welcome
denn	because; for

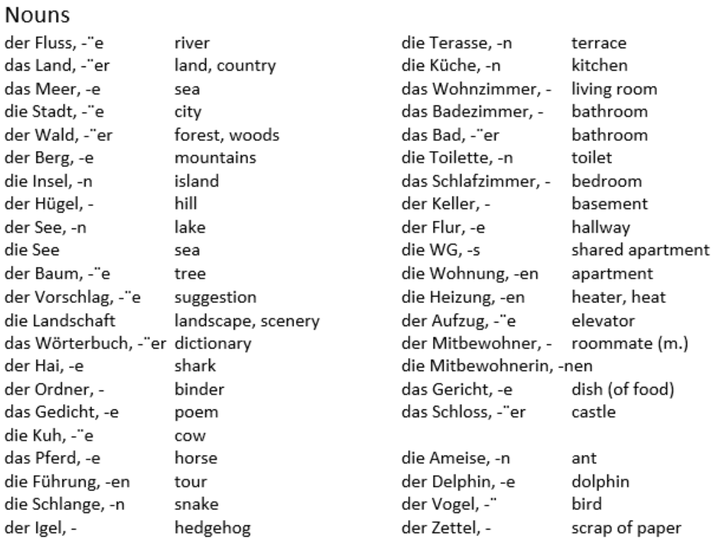
Adjectives

süß	sweet
sauer	sour
salzig	salty
lecker	tasty
vegetarisch	vegetarian
satt	full
(un)gesund	(un)healthy
vegan	vegan
ledig	single
verheiratet	married
verlobt	engaged
geschieden	divorced
kinderlos	childless
schön	pretty

An interactive H5P element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=530#h5p-44

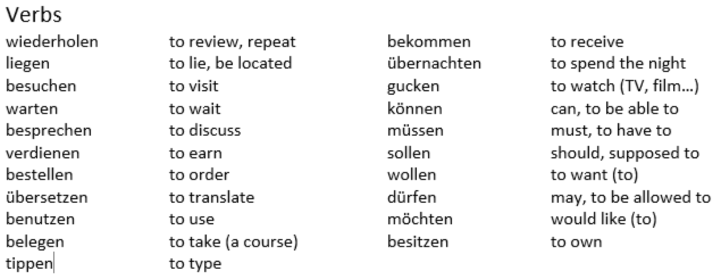
Chapter 3 - Glossary

Kapitel 3 Wortschatz



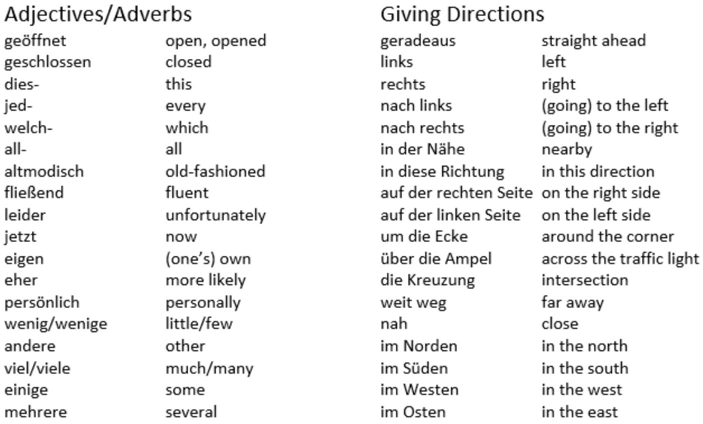
Nouns

der Fluss, -¨e	river	die Terasse, -n	terrace
das Land, -¨er	land, country	die Küche, -n	kitchen
das Meer, -e	sea	das Wohnzimmer, -	living room
die Stadt, -¨e	city	das Badezimmer, -	bathroom
der Wald, -¨er	forest, woods	das Bad, -¨er	bathroom
der Berg, -e	mountains	die Toilette, -n	toilet
die Insel, -n	island	das Schlafzimmer, -	bedroom
der Hügel, -	hill	der Keller, -	basement
der See, -n	lake	der Flur, -e	hallway
die See	sea	die WG, -s	shared apartment
der Baum, -¨e	tree	die Wohnung, -en	apartment
der Vorschlag, -¨e	suggestion	die Heizung, -en	heater, heat
die Landschaft	landscape, scenery	der Aufzug, -¨e	elevator
das Wörterbuch, -¨er	dictionary	der Mitbewohner, -	roommate (m.)
der Hai, -e	shark	die Mitbewohnerin, -nen	
der Ordner, -	binder	das Gericht, -e	dish (of food)
das Gedicht, -e	poem	das Schloss, -¨er	castle
die Kuh, -¨e	cow		
das Pferd, -e	horse	die Ameise, -n	ant
die Führung, -en	tour	der Delphin, -e	dolphin
die Schlange, -n	snake	der Vogel, -¨	bird
der Igel, -	hedgehog	der Zettel, -	scrap of paper



Verbs

wiederholen	to review, repeat	bekommen	to receive
liegen	to lie, be located	übernachten	to spend the night
besuchen	to visit	gucken	to watch (TV, film…)
warten	to wait	können	can, to be able to
besprechen	to discuss	müssen	must, to have to
verdienen	to earn	sollen	should, supposed to
bestellen	to order	wollen	to want (to)
übersetzen	to translate	dürfen	may, to be allowed to
benutzen	to use	möchten	would like (to)
belegen	to take (a course)	besitzen	to own
tippen	to type		



Adjectives/Adverbs

geöffnet	open, opened
geschlossen	closed
dies-	this
jed-	every
welch-	which
all-	all
altmodisch	old-fashioned
fließend	fluent
leider	unfortunately
jetzt	now
eigen	(one’s) own
eher	more likely
persönlich	personally
wenig/wenige	little/few
andere	other
viel/viele	much/many
einige	some
mehrere	several

Giving Directions

geradeaus	straight ahead
links	left
rechts	right
nach links	(going) to the left
nach rechts	(going) to the right
in der Nähe	nearby
in diese Richtung	in this direction
auf der rechten Seite	on the right side
auf der linken Seite	on the left side
um die Ecke	around the corner
über die Ampel	across the traffic light
die Kreuzung	intersection
weit weg	far away
nah	close
im Norden	in the north
im Süden	in the south
im Westen	in the west
im Osten	in the east

Dictionary

A

das Abendessen	supper
aber	but
ach	oh
acht	eight
achtzig	eighty
die Adresse, -n	address
all-	all
alle	everyone
alles	everything
das Alphabet	alphabet
als	as
alt	old
altmodisch	old-fashioned
am Semesteranfang	at the beginning of the semester
die Ameise, -n	ant
Amerika	America; the United States
andere	other
die Antwort, -en	answer
antworten	to answer
der Anzug, -¨e	suit
der Apfel, -¨	apple
der Apfelsaft	apple juice
die Apotheke, -n	pharmacy
April	April
arbeiten	to work
arm	arm
der Artikel, –	article
Asien	Asia
athletisch	athletic
auch	also, too

auf der linken Seite	on the left side
auf der rechten Seite	on the right side
auf Wiedersehen	good-bye
der Aufzug, -¨e	elevator
August	August
aus	from
der Ausflug, -¨e	excursion, side trip
Australien	Australia
das Auto, -s	car, automobile
B	
das Baby, -s	baby
das Bad, -¨er	bathroom
der Badeanzug, -¨e	bathing suit
Badelatschen	flipflops
das Badezimmer, –	bathroom
bald	soon
die Banane, -n	banana
die Bank, -en	bank
Bar	cash
Baseball	baseball
Basketball	basketball
der Baum, -¨e	tree
beginnen	to begin
bei	at (dat.)
bekommen	to receive, to get
belegen	to take a course
Belgien	Belgium
beliebt	popular, beloved
bellen	to bark
benutzen	to use
der Berg, -e	mountain
beschreiben	to describe
besitzen	to own, possess
besprechen	to discuss
bestellen	to order

besuchen	to visit
die Bibliothek, -en	library
das Bier	beer
der Bikini, -s	bikini
Biologie	biology
bis	until (acc.)
bis bald	see you later; “until soon”
bis später	see you later; “until later”
bitte	please, you’re welcome
bitte schön	Here you go.
blau	blue
bleiben	to stay, remain
der Bleistift, -e	pencil
die Bluse, -n	blouse
die Bohne, -n	bean
Brasilien	Brazil
brauchen	to need
braun	brown
die Brille, -n	glasses
das Brillenetui, -s	glasses case
der Brokkoli	broccoli
das Brot, -e	bread
der Bruder, -¨	brother
brüllen	to roar
das Buch, -¨er	book
das Bundesland, -¨er	federal state
bunt	many-colored
das Büro, -s	office
der Bus, -se	bus
C	
der Cent	cent
chaotisch	chaotic
Chemie	chemistry
China	China
clever	clever

das Comicheft, -e	comic book
der Computer, –	computer
cool	cool
der Cousin, -s	cousin
die Cousine, -n	cousin
D	
da	there
dabei	with you, with me, etc.
dadurch	through that, through it, etc.
Dänemark	Denmark
dein-	your
der Delphin, -e	dolphin
denken	to think
denn	because, for
denn	(flavoring particle that adds interest)
Deutsch	German
Deutschland	Germany
die Deutschstunde, -n	German class
das	the (neuter); that
Das stimmt.	That´s right.
dein-	your (informal, singular)
der	the (masculine)
Dezember	December
dich	you (familiar, singular)
die	the (feminine)
Dienstag	Tuesday
dies-	this
dir	(to) you (informal, singular)
die Disco, -s	disco
doch	(flavoring particle, adds emphasis)
Donnerstag	Thursday
das Dorf, -¨er	village
dort drüben	over there
draußen	outside
drei	three

dreißig	thirty
du	you (informal, singular)
dunkel	dark
durch	through (acc.)
dürfen	may, to be allowed to
E	
echt	real, really
die Ecke, -n	corner
egoistisch	egotistical
die Ehefrau, -en	wife
der Ehemann, -¨er	husband
eher	more likely to be
das Ei, -er	egg
eigen	own
ein-	a, an
ein bisschen	a little
einfach	easy, simple
einige	some
einkaufen gehen	to go shopping
einladen	to invite
ein paar	a few, a couple
eins	one
das Eis	ice cream; ice
elegant	elegant
elf	eleven
die Eltern (pl.)	parents
die E-mail, -s	e-mail
die Energie	energy
eng	narrow
England	England
Englisch	English
der Enkel, –	grandson
das Enkelkind, -er	grandchild
die Enkelin, -nen	granddaughter
Entschuldigung	Excuse me.

er	he
die Erbse, -n	pea
die Erdbeere, -n	strawberry
das Essen	food
es	it
es gibt	there is, there are
essen, e→i	to eat
euch	you guys, y'all (informal, plural)
euer-	you guys', yall's (informal, plural)
der Euro	Euro (currency in European Union)
exzentrisch	excentric
F	
fahren, a→ä	to drive
das Fahrrad, -¨er	bicycle
die Familie, -n	family
fantastisch	fantastic
die Farbe, -n	color
fauchen	to hiss
faul	lazy
Februar	February
das Fenster, –	window
das Fernsehprogramm, -e	TV program
der Fernseher, –	TV, television
der Film, -e	movie, film
der Filzstift, -e	board marker
finden	to find; to have an opinion about
Finnland	Finland
der Fisch, -e	fish
fit	fit, in shape
das Fleisch	meat
fleißig	hard-working, industrious
flexibel	flexible
fliegen	to fly
fließend	fluent, fluently
Flöte	flute

der Flur, -e	hallway, corridor
der Fluss, -¨e	river
folgend	following
fotografieren	to photograph, take pictures
die Frage, -n	question
fragen	to ask
Frankreich	France
Französisch	French
die Frau, -en	woman; wife
die Frauentoilette, -n	women’s restroom
frei	free
Freitag	Friday
die Fremdsprache, -n	foreign language
der Freund, -e	friend; boyfriend
die Freundin, -nen	friend; girlfriend
freundlich	friendly
Freut mich!	Nice to meet you!
die Fritten	fries
der Frühling	spring
das Frühstück	breakfast
die Führung, -en	tour
fünf	five
fünfzig	fifty
funktioneren	to function, work properly
für	for (acc.)
Fußball	soccer
die Fußgängerzone, -n	pedestrian zone

G

ganz	completely, entirely
der Garten, -¨	garden
die Gasse, -n	small street
der Gast, -¨e	guest
das Gebäude, –	building
geben, e→i	to give
das Gebirge	mountain range

das Gedicht, -e	poem
gehen	to go (on foot), to walk
Geige	violin
gegen	against (acc.)
gelb	yellow
das Geld	money
das Gemüse	vegetables (always singular)
gemütlich	comfortable
genug	enough
geöffnet	open, opened
Geographie	geography
geradeaus	straight ahead
das Gericht, -e	dish (of food)
gern(e)	like to; gladly
das Geschenk, -e	present, gift
die Geschichte	history; story
geschieden	divorced
geschlossen	closed
die Geschwister (pl.)	siblings
gestern	yesterday
gesund	healthy
das Getränk, -e	drink
getrennt	separate
gewinnen	to win
Gitarre	guitar
das Glück	luck
glücklich	happy, lucky
Golf	golf
der Gottesdienst, -e	church service
grau	gray
Griechenland	Greece
Griechisch	Greek
groß	big, tall, large
die Großmutter, -¨	grandmother
der Großvater, -¨	grandfather

grün	green
gucken	to watch, look
der Gummi, -s	eraser
die Gurke, -n	cucumber
der Gürtel, –	belt
gut	good, well, fine
Guten Abend	good evening
Guten Morgen	good morning; hello
Gute Nacht	good night
Guten Tag	hello; good day
H	
haben	to have
das Hähnchen, –	chicken
der Hai, -e	shark
der Halbbruder, -¨	half brother
die Halbschwester, -n	half sister
halb	half
hallo	hello
halten	to halt, to stop
der Hamburger, –	hamburger
der Handschuh, -e	glove
das Handy, -s	cell phone
die Haupttür, -en	main door
die Hintertür, -en	back door
das Haus, -¨er	house
die Hausaufgabe, -n	homework
die Hausnummer, -n	house number; address number
das Heft, -e	notebook
heiraten	to marry, to get married
heiß	hot
heißen	to be called
heiter	clear
die Heizung	heat, heater
helfen, e→i	to help
hell	light

das Hemd, -en	button-up man’s shirt
der Herbst	fall, autumn
die Herrentoilette, -n	men’s restroom
heute	today
hier	here
die Hilfe	help
Hockey	hockey
hören	to hear, listen to
die Hose, -n	pants
das Hotel, -s	hotel
hübsch	good-looking
der Hügel, –	hill
der Hund, -e	dog
hundert	hundred
der Hunger	hunger
Hunger haben	to be hungry
der Hut, -¨e	hat
I	
ich	I
die Idee, -n	idea
der Igel, –	hedgehog
ihn	him
Ihnen	(to) you (formal; singular and plural)
ihr-	her, their
ihr	you (plural, familiar), y’all, you guys
Ihr-	your (formal; singular and plural)
im Angebot	available
im Norden	in the north
im Osten	in the east
im Süden	in the south
im Westen	in the west
immer	always
in	in
in diese Richtung	(going) in this direction
in Eile	in a hurry

in der Mitte	in the middle
in der Nähe	nearby, in the proximity
Indien	India
Indisch	Indian
Informatik	computer science
die Insel, -n	island
intelligent	intelligent
interessant	interesting
das Internet	internet
Irland	Ireland
Island	Iceland
Italienisch	Italian
J	
ja	yes
das Jahr, -e	year
Januar	January
Japan	Japan
die Jeans, –	jeans
jed-	every
jeden Tag	every day
jen-	that
jetzt	now
der Job, -s	job
joggen	to jog
der Joghurt	joghurt
die Jugendherberge, -n	youth hostel
Jugendliche	teenagers
Juli	July
jung	young
Jungs	boys, guys (slang)
Juni	June
K	
der Kaffee	coffee
kalt	cold
Kann ich Ihnen helfen?	Can I help you?

Kanada	Canada
kaputt	worn out, broken down, tired
die Karotte, -n	carrot
die Kartoffel, -n	potato
der Käse	cheese
die Katze, -n	cat
kaufen	to buy
kein-	not any, not a, no
der Keks, -e	cookie
der Keller, –	basement, cellar
der Kellner, –	waiter
die Kellnerin, -nen	waitress
kennen	to know (a person), be familiar with (place, book, etc.)
kennenlernen	to get to know, become familiar with
das Kind, -er	child
kinderlos	childless, without children
das Kino, -s	movie theater
Klarinette	clarinette
die Klamotten	clothing (slang)
der Klassiker, –	classic
Klavier	piano
klein	small, short, little
kochen	to cook
der Kohl	cabbage
komisch	strange, funny
kommen	to come
kommunizieren	to communicate
kompetent	competent
können	can, to be able to
konservativ	conservative
kosten	to cost
das Kotelett, -s	pork cutlet, pork chop
krank	sick
kreativ	creative

die Kreuzung, -en	intersection
kritisch	critical
Kuba	Cuba
die Küche, -n	kitchen; cuisine
der Kugelschreiber, –	pen
die Kuh, -¨e	cow
kühl	cool
der Kuli, -s	pen
die Kultur, -en	culture
Kunst	art
der Kurs, -e	course
die kurze Hose	shorts
L	
lächeln	to smile
der Laden, -¨	store
das Land, -¨er	land, country
die Landkarte, -n	map
die Landschaft	scenery, landscape
lang	long
langweilig	boring
der Laptop, -s	laptop computer
Litauen	Lithuania
Latein	Latin
laufen, a→ä	to run, walk fast
laut	loud
leben	to live (permanently)
lecker	tasty
ledig	single
leider	unfortunately
lernen	to learn; to study for a test or quiz
lesen, e→ie	to read
die Leute	people
liberal	liberal
lieber	prefer, prefer to
lieblings-	favorite

Liechtenstein	Liechtenstein
liegen	to lie, to be located
lila	purple, lilac
links	left
Literatur	literature
der Löwe, -n	lion
Luxemburg	Luxembourg
M	
machen	to make, to do
Mai	May
der Mais	corn
mal	(flavoring particle used to soften command)
malen	to paint, draw
man	people, one, you, they
manch-	many, many a
manchmal	sometimes
der Mann, -¨er	man; husband
März	March
Mathe	math
Mathematik	mathematics
die Maus, -¨e	mouse
das Meer, -e	sea
mehrere	several
mein-	my
meinen	to mean, to think
meistens	mostly
der Mensch, -en	human, person
Mexiko	Mexico
miauen	to meow
mich	me
die Milch	milk
die Million, -en	million
das Mineralwasser	mineral water
die Minute, -n	minute

mir	(to) me
miserable	miserable
mit	with
der Mitbewohner, –	roommate
die Mitbewohnerin, -nen	roommate
das Mittagessen	lunch
Mittwoch	Wednesday
möchten	would like
modern	modern
die Möglichkeit, -en	possibility
die Möhre, -n	carrot
mögen	to like, to like to
der Monat, -e	month
Montag	Monday
morgen	tomorrow
müde	tired
muhen	to moo
Musik	music
müssen	must, to have to
die Mutter, -¨	mother
die Mütze, -n	cap, hat
N	
nach	after, to
nach links	(going) to the left
nach rechts	(going) to the right
der Nachbar, -n	neighbor
die Nachbarin, -nen	neighbor
nächstes Jahr	next year
nächstes Semester	next semester
nah	near, close
naiv	naïve
der Name, -n	name
natürlich	natural, naturally
nebelig	foggy
der Neffe, – n	nephew

nein	no
nehmen, e→i	to take
nerven	to be annoying, to annoy
neu	new
neun	nine
neunzig	ninety
nicht	not
die Nichte, -n	niece
nie	never
normalerweise	normally
Norwegen	Norway
die Note, -n	grade (on a test, homework…etc.)
November	November
die Nudel, -n	noodle
null	zero
nur	only
O	
objektiv	objective
das Obst	fruit
oder	or
oft	often
ohne	without (acc.)
Oktober	October
die Olive, -n	olive
der Onkel, –	uncle
optimistisch	optimistic
orange	orange
die Orange, -n	orange
der Orangensaft	orange juice
der Ordner, –	binder
die Organisation, -en	organisation
Österreich	Austria
P	
das Papier, -e	paper
der Park, -e	park

parken	to park
der Parkplatz, -¨e	parking place
die Party, -s	party
der Pass, -¨e	passport
die Pause, -n	break, pause
die Person, -n	person
persönlich	personally
Peru	Peru
pessimistisch	pessimistic
der Pfeffer	pepper
die Pflanze, -n	plant
das Pferd, -e	horse
Philosophie	philosophy
Physik	physics
die Pizza	pizza
Polen	Poland
der Politiker, –	politician
die Politikerin, -nen	politician
die Polizei	police
Portugiesisch	Portuguese
die Post	post office
posten	to post
die Pommes frites	fries
die Portion, -en	portion
das Poster, –	poster
praktisch	practical
preiswert	priceworthy
probieren	to try something new
das Problem, -e	problem
der Professor, –	professor
die Professorin, -nen	professor
progessiv	progressive
Psychologie	psychology
der Pulli, -s	pullover
der Pullover, –	pullover

pünktlich	punctual, on time
purpur	purple
Q	
das Quiz	quiz
R	
der Radiergummi, -s	eraser
rauchen	to smoke
die Rechnung, -en	check, bill
rechts	right
regnen	to rain
regnerisch	rainy
reich	rich
der Reis	rice
die Reise, -n	trip, vacation
reisen	to travel
der Reisepass, -¨e	passport
reparieren	to repair
das Restaurant, -s	restaurant
der Rock, -¨e	skirt
Rockmusik	rock music
der Roman, -e	novel
rosa	pink
rot	red
der Rucksack, -¨e	backpack
ruhig	calm, quiet, still
Rumänien	Romania
Russland	Russia
S	
sagen	to say
der Salat, -e	salad; lettuce
das Salz	salt
salzig	salty
Samstag	Saturday
Sandalen	sandals
sarkastisch	sarcastic

Saudi-Arabien	Saudi Arabia
sauer	sour
Saxophon	saxophone
scheinen	to shine
schick	fashionable
der Schinken	ham
schlafen	to sleep
das Schlafzimmer, –	bedroom
Schlagzeug	drum
die Schlange, -n	snake
schlecht	bad
das Schloss, -¨er	castle
schneiden	to cut
schneien	to snow
schnell	fast
das Schnitzel	breaded cutlet
die Schokolade, -n	chocolate
schon	already
schön	pretty, nice
schon gut	never mind
schreiben	to write
der Schuh, -e	shoe
der Schüler, –	high school/elementary student
die Schülerin, -nen	high school/elementary student
der Schwager, –	brother-in-law
die Schwägerin, -nen	sister-in-law
schwarz	black
Schweden	Sweden
das Schwein, -e	pig
die Schweiz	Switzerland
die Schwester, -n	sister
schwierig	difficult, hard
schwimmen	to swim
sechs	six
sechzig	sixty

der See, -n	lake
die See	sea
sehen, e→ie	to see
die Sehenswürdigkeit, -en	tourist sights
sehr	very
sein	to be
sein-	his, its
die Seite, -n	page
der Sellerie	celery
das Semester, –	semester
der Semesteranfang, -¨e	the beginning of the semester
sentimental	sentimental
September	September
sie	she; they
Sie	you (formal; singular and plural)
sieben	seven
siebzig	seventy
singen	to singen
so	so
die Socke, -n	sock
der Sohn, -¨e	son
solch-	such, such a
sollen	should, supposed to
der Sommer	summer
die Sonne	sun
die Sonnenbrille, -n	sunglasses
sonnig	sunny
Sonntag	Sunday
Sozialogie	socialogy
die Spaghetti	spaghetti
Spanisch	spanish
der Spargel	asparagus
spät	late
spazieren	to take a walk
der Speck	bacon

die Speisekarte, -n	menu
die Spezialität, -en	specialty
das Spiel, -e	game
spielen	to play
spinnen	to spin; to be crazy
der Sport	sports
sprechen, e→i	to speak
stachelig	prickly
die Stadt, -¨e	city
das Stadtzentrum	city center, downtown
das Steak	steak
stehen	to stand, be standing
stief-	step-
der Stiefel, –	boot
der Stift, -e	pencil
der Stiefbruder, -¨	step-brother
die Stiefmutter, -¨e	step-mother
die Stiefschwester, -n	step-sister
der Stiefvater, -¨	step-father
der Stöckelschuh, -e	high heel
stoßen, o→ö	to crash into
der Strand, -¨e	beach
die Straße, -n	street
die Straßenlaterne, -n	streetlight
der Student, -en	college student
die Studentin, -nen	college student
studieren	to study at a university or college
der Stuhl, -¨e	chair
die Stunde, -n	hour
stürmen	to storm
Südkorea	South Korea
subjektiv	subjective
suchen	to search for, look for
super	super
der Supermarkt, -¨e	supermarket

das Sushi	sushi
süß	sweet
Süßigkeiten	sweets
T	
die Tafel, -n	white board, chalk board
der Tag, -e	day
die Tante, -n	aunt
tanzen	to dance
die Tasche, -n	bag, duffle bag, purse, pocket
tausend	thousand
das Taxi, -s	taxi
die Technologie	technology
der Tee	tea
Tennis	tennis
der Teppich, -e	rug
die Terasse, -n	terrace
der Test, -s	test
teuer	expensive
der Thunfisch	tuna
der Tiger, –	tiger
tippen	to type
der Tisch, -e	table
die Tochter, -¨	daughter
die Toilette, -n	bathroom
die Tomate, -n	tomato
der Tomatensaft	tomato juice
tot	dead
der Tourist, -en	tourist
die Tourstin, -nen	tourist
tragen	to wear, to carry
die Traube, -n	grape
der Traubensaft	grape juice
trinken	to drink
das Trinkgeld	tip
Trompete	trumpet

Tschechien	Czech Republic
tschüss	bye
das T-shirt, -s	t-shirt
Tuba	tuba
die Tür, -en	door
die Türkei	Turkey
Türkisch	Turkish
typisch	typical
U	
über	about; over, above
übernachten	to spend the night
übersetzen	to translate
die Uhr, -en	clock, watch
um	at (time); around (acc.)
unbedingt	by all means
und	and
Ungarn	Hungary
ungefähr	approximately, around, about
ungesund	ungesund
die Uni, -s	university
die Universität, -en	university
uns	us
unser-	our
die Urgroßmutter, -¨	great grandmother
der Urgroßvater, -¨	great grandfather
V	
der Vater, -¨er	father
vegan	vegan
der Vegetarier, –	vegetarian
die Vegetarierin, -nen	vegetarian
vegetarisch	vegetarian
verbringen	to spend (time)
verdienen	to earn
vergessen	to forget
verheiratet	married

verkaufen	to sell
verlobt	engaged
vermissen	to miss
verstehen	to understand
das Videospiel, -e	video game
viel	much
viele	many
vielleicht	maybe
vier	four
das Viertel	fourth; quarter (of an hour)
vierzig	forty
Vietnam	Vietnam
Vietnamesisch	Vietnamese
der Vogel, -¨	bird
voll	completely, fully
Volleyball	volleyball
von	from, of
vor	before, in front of
der Vorschlag, -¨e	suggestion
vorsichtig	cautious
W	
die Wand, -¨e	wall
wandern	to hike
wann	when
warm	warm
warten	to wait
warum	why
was	what
was für ein/e…	what type of a…
das Wasser	water
die Wassermelone, -n	watermelon
weg	gone, away
Weihnachten	Christmas
der Wein	wine
weiß	white

weit	far
weiter	farther, further
welch-	which
die Welt	world
wen	whom (acc.)
wenig	little (quantity)
wenige	few
wenn	whenever, if
wer	who
der Werwolf, -¨e	werwolf
werden, e→i	to become
wessen	whose
das Wetter	weather
die WG, -s	shared apartment
wichtig	important
wie	how; like, as
Wie spät ist es?	How late is it?
Wie viel Uhr haben wir?	What time do we have?
Wie viel Uhr ist es?	What time is it?
wieder	again
wiederholen	to review
willkommen	welcome
windig	windy
der Winter	winter
wir	we
der Wischer, –	whiteboard eraser, chalkboard eraser
wissen	to know (a fact)
wo	where
die Woche, -n	week
das Wochenende, -n	weekend
woher	where from, from where
wohin	where to, to where
wohnen	to live
die Wohngemeinschaft, -en	shared apartment
die Wohnung, -en	apartment

das Wohnzimmer, –	living room
wolkig	cloudy
wollen	to want to, to want
das Wörterbuch, -¨er	dictionary
die Wurst, -¨e	sausage
Z	
zahlen	to pay
zehn	ten
zeichnen	to sketch
zeigen	to show
die Zeitschrift, -en	magazine
die Zeitung, -en	newspaper
der Zettel, –	scrap of paper
das Ziel, -e	goal
das Zimmer, –	room
der Zombie, -s	zombie
zu	too, to
zufrieden	satisfied
zum Abendessen	for supper
zum Frühstück	for breakfast
zum Mittagessen	for lunch
zusammen	together
zwanzig	twenty
zwei	two
die Zwiebel, -n	onion
zwölf	twelve

Appendix

This is where you can add appendices or other back matter.

Just for Fun!

If you want to keep up with the top ten songs on the German charts (in German), this site is updated monthly with links to the songs.

- https://www.goethe.de/prj/stg/de/mus/cha.html

If you like playing games to learn German, this site has games based on vocabulary, grammar, and just about any other topic.

- https://www.german-games.net/

This is SUPER advanced for GR 101, but here's ARD's Youtube page with links to the nightly news in Germany.

- https://www.youtube.com/@tagesschau

Here's a German sitcom, *Extra*, to help you learn German. It's cheesy but helpful:

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=1214#oembed-1

This link to Easy German's Youtube page has new videos uploaded every week:

- https://www.youtube.com/@EasyGerman

If you want to watch the entire Nicos Weg movie without interruptions, here's the link.

One or more interactive elements has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view them online here: https://una.pressbooks.pub/gr101/?p=1214#oembed-2

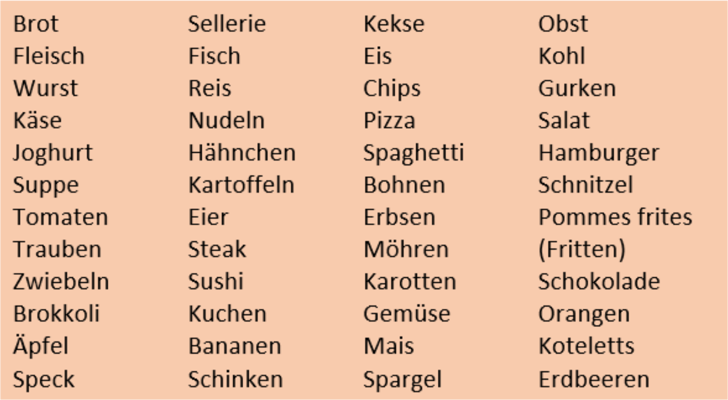
Want to study in Germany? DaaD's site has more scholarships than you can imagine for all sorts of programs and majors. Click EN at the top to see it in English.

- https://www.daad.de/de/

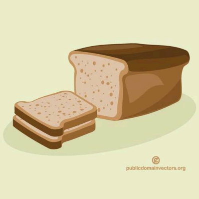
Projekt Gutenberg has a lot of copyright-free classics online for you to read.

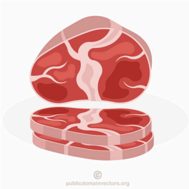
- https://www.projekt-gutenberg.org/

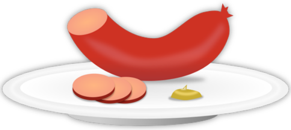
Chapter 2 Vocabulary (visual learner glossary)

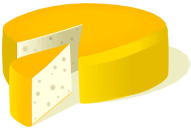


Brot
Fleisch
Wurst
Käse
Joghurt
Suppe
Tomaten
Trauben
Zwiebeln
Brokkoli
Äpfel
Speck
Sellerie
Fisch
Reis
Nudeln
Hähnchen
Kartoffeln
Eier
Steak
Sushi
Kuchen
Bananen
Schinken
Kekse
Eis
Chips
Pizza
Spaghetti
Bohnen
Erbsen
Möhren
Karotten
Gemüse
Mais
Spargel
Obst
Kohl
Gurken
Salat
Hamburger
Schnitzel
Pommes frites (Fritten)
Schokolade
Orangen
Koteletts
Erdbeeren

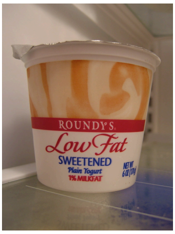


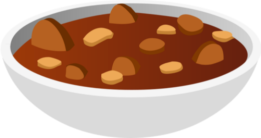


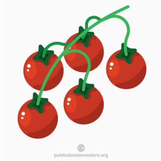


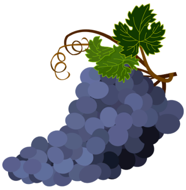


das Brot das Fleisch die Wurst der Käse

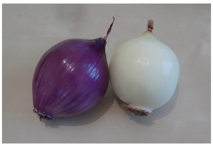

ROUNDY'S
Low Fat
SWEETENED
Plain Yogurt
1% MILKFAT

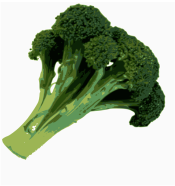


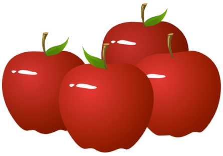


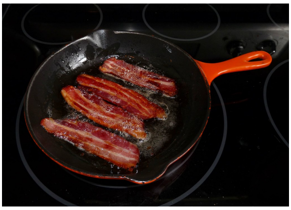


der Joghurt die Suppe, -n die Tomate, -n die Traube, -n

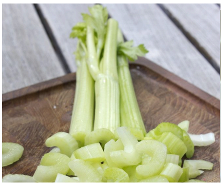


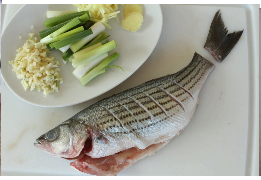


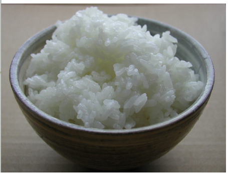


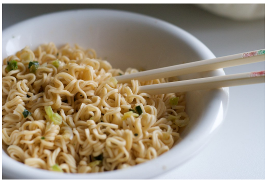


die Zwiebel, -n der Brokkoli der Apfel, -¨e der Speck

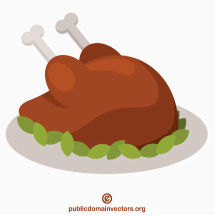


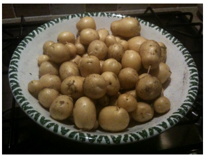


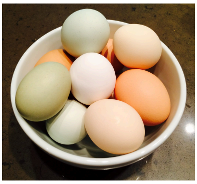


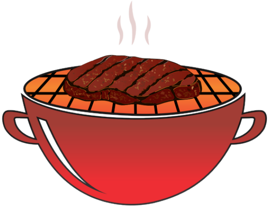


der Sellerie der Fisch der Reis die Nudel, -n

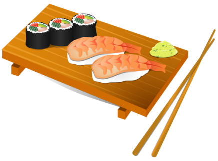

publicdomainvectors.org

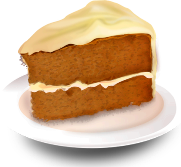


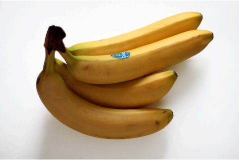


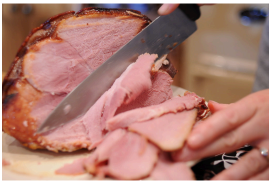


das Hähnchen die Kartoffel, -n das Ei, -er das Steak, -s

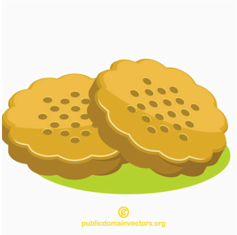
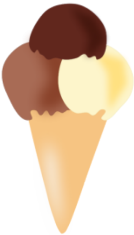
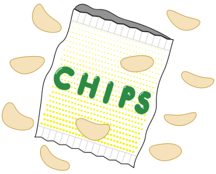


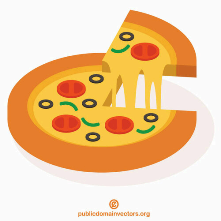




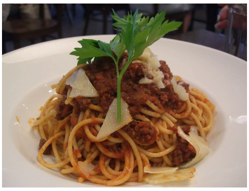
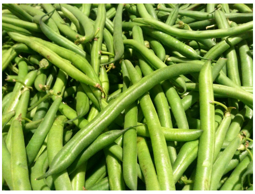
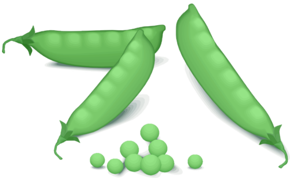
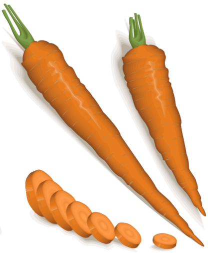


das Sushi der Kuchen die Banane, -n der Schinken

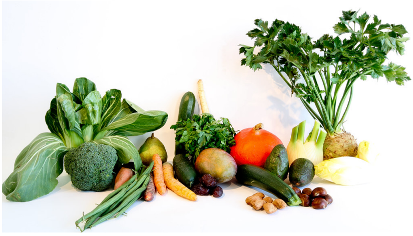




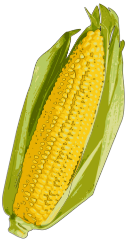


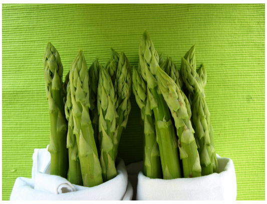
der Keks, -e das Eis die Chips die Pizza

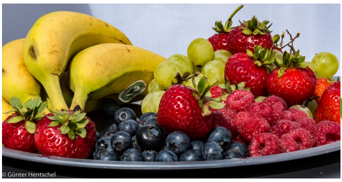
die Spaghetti die Bohne, -n die Erbse, -n die Möhre, -n/die Karotte, -n



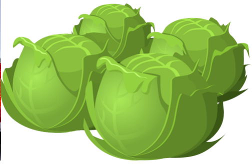


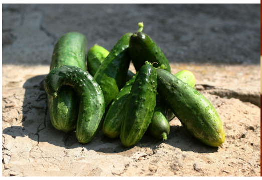


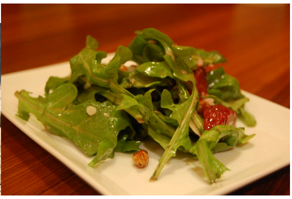
das Gemüse der Mais der Spargel



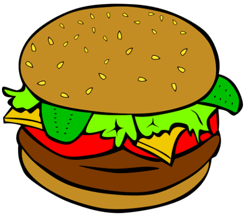
© Günter Hentschel

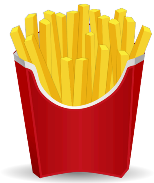






das Obst der Kohl die Gurke, -n der Salat, -e





der Hamburger, – das Schnitzel die Pommes frites/die Fritten

die Schokolade die Orange,-n das Kotelett, -s die Erdbeere, -n